

Use these links to rapidly review the document  
[TABLE OF CONTENTS](#)

[Table of Contents](#)

As filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on February 28, 2018

Registration Statement No. 333-

---

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**  
Washington, D.C. 20549

---

**FORM S-3**  
REGISTRATION STATEMENT  
UNDER  
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

---

**TWO HARBORS INVESTMENT CORP.**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

**Maryland**  
(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)

**27-0312904**  
(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification No.)

**575 Lexington Avenue, Suite 2930  
New York, New York 10022  
(612) 629-2500**

(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

---

**Rebecca B. Sandberg, Esq.  
General Counsel and Secretary  
c/o Two Harbors Investment Corp.  
575 Lexington Avenue, Suite 2930  
New York, New York 10022  
Tel: (612) 629-2500  
Fax: (612) 629-2501**

(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

---

**Copies to:**

**Stephen M. Quinlivan, Esq.  
Bryan J. Pitko, Esq.  
Stinson Leonard Street LLP  
50 South Sixth Street, Suite 2600  
Minneapolis, MN 55402  
Tel: (612) 335-1500**

---

**Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public:  
From time to time after the effective date of this registration statement.**

If the only securities being registered on this Form are being offered pursuant to dividend or interest reinvestment plans, please check the following box:

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, other than securities offered only in connection with dividend or interest reinvestment plans, check the following box:

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a registration statement pursuant to General Instruction I.D. or a post-effective amendment thereto that shall become effective upon filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 462(e) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment to a registration statement filed pursuant to General Instruction I.D. filed to register additional securities or additional classes of securities pursuant to Rule 413(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company, or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company", and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. (Check One):

Large accelerated filer

Accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer   
(Do not check if a  
smaller reporting company)

Smaller reporting company   
Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 7(a)(2)(B) of Securities Act.

CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE

Title of each class of securities to be registered	Proposed maximum aggregate offering Price(1)(2)	Amount of registration fee(3)
Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Depositary Shares, Debt Securities		

- (1) Omitted pursuant to Form S-3 General Instruction II.E.
- (2) In accordance with Rule 415(a)(6) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the securities registered pursuant to this registration statement include \$132,210,495 of unsold securities previously registered on Form S-3 (Registration Statement No. 333-204216), as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on May 15, 2015. In connection with the prior registration of such unsold securities, the registrant paid a registration fee of \$15,363 applicable to such unsold securities. In addition an unspecified number or amount of the securities of each identified class of securities is being registered as may be issued from time to time at indeterminate prices. There is also being registered hereunder an indeterminate number of securities as may be issuable upon exercise, conversion or exchange for, as the case may be, any other securities registered hereby. Separate consideration may or may not be received for securities that are issuable upon exercise, conversion, or exchange of convertible or exchangeable securities or that are issued in units.
- (3) In accordance with Rules 456(b) and 457(r), the registrant is deferring payment of the remaining registration fee subject to the conditions set forth in such rules.



## **Two Harbors Investment Corp.**

**Common Stock  
Preferred Stock  
Depositary Shares  
Debt Securities**

---

We may offer, issue and sell, from time to time, shares of our common stock, preferred stock, depositary shares and debt securities, which may consist of debentures, notes, or other types of debt, in one or more offerings. We will provide specific terms of each issuance of these securities in supplements to this prospectus. We may offer and sell these securities to or through one or more underwriters, dealers and agents, or directly to purchasers, on a continuous or delayed basis. In addition, selling securityholders may sell these securities, from time to time, on terms described in the applicable prospectus supplement. You should read this prospectus and any supplement carefully before you decide to invest. This prospectus may not be used to consummate sales of these securities unless it is accompanied by a prospectus supplement.

Our common stock is listed on the New York Stock Exchange, or NYSE, under the symbol "TWO."

We have elected to be taxed as a real estate investment trust, or REIT, for U.S. federal income tax purposes. To assist us in qualifying as a REIT, among other purposes, ownership of shares of our common stock by any person is limited, with certain exceptions, to 9.8% by value or by number of shares, whichever is more restrictive, of the outstanding shares of our common stock and 9.8% by value or by number of shares, whichever is more restrictive, of the aggregate of the outstanding shares of our capital stock. In addition, our charter contains various other restrictions on the ownership and transfer of our stock.

Our principal office is located at 575 Lexington Avenue, Suite 2930, New York, New York 10022. Our telephone number is (612) 629-2500.

---

**Investing in our securities involves risk. You should carefully consider the information referred to under the caption "*Risk Factors*" on page 2 before you invest.**

**Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined that this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.**

---

The date of this prospectus is February 28, 2018

---

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
<a href="#">ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS</a>	<a href="#">ii</a>
<a href="#">NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS</a>	<a href="#">ii</a>
<a href="#">PROSPECTUS SUMMARY</a>	<a href="#">1</a>
<a href="#">RISK FACTORS</a>	<a href="#">2</a>
<a href="#">RATIO OF EARNINGS TO COMBINED FIXED CHARGES AND PREFERRED STOCK DIVIDENDS</a>	<a href="#">2</a>
<a href="#">USE OF PROCEEDS</a>	<a href="#">2</a>
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK</a>	<a href="#">3</a>
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF DEPOSITARY SHARES</a>	<a href="#">6</a>
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES</a>	<a href="#">10</a>
<a href="#">RESTRICTIONS ON OWNERSHIP AND TRANSFER</a>	<a href="#">21</a>
<a href="#">CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF THE MARYLAND GENERAL CORPORATION LAW AND TWO HARBORS' CHARTER AND BYLAWS</a>	<a href="#">24</a>
<a href="#">U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS</a>	<a href="#">29</a>
<a href="#">SELLING SECURITYHOLDERS</a>	<a href="#">51</a>
<a href="#">PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION</a>	<a href="#">52</a>
<a href="#">LEGAL MATTERS</a>	<a href="#">55</a>
<a href="#">EXPERTS</a>	<a href="#">55</a>
<a href="#">WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION</a>	<a href="#">55</a>
<a href="#">INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN DOCUMENTS BY REFERENCE</a>	<a href="#">55</a>

You should rely only on the information contained in this document or to which we have referred you. We have not authorized anyone to provide you with information that is different. This document may only be used where it is legal to sell these securities. The information in this document may only be accurate on the date of this document.

## ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is part of a registration statement that we filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC or Commission, using a "shelf" registration process. Under this shelf registration process, we may sell the securities described in this prospectus in one or more offerings. This prospectus provides you with a general description of the securities we may offer. Each time we offer to sell securities, we will provide a supplement to this prospectus that will contain specific information about the terms of that offering. The prospectus supplement may also add, update or change information contained in this prospectus. It is important for you to consider the information contained in this prospectus and any prospectus supplement together with additional information described under the heading "*Where You Can Find More Information.*"

You should rely only on the information incorporated by reference or set forth in this prospectus or the applicable prospectus supplement. We have not authorized anyone else to provide you with additional or different information. You should not assume that the information in this prospectus, the applicable prospectus supplement or any other offering material is accurate as of any date other than the dates on the front of those documents.

When used in this prospectus, the terms "Two Harbors," "company," "issuer," "registrant," "we," "our," and "us" refer to Two Harbors Investment Corp. and its consolidated subsidiaries, unless otherwise specified.

## NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus contains, or incorporates by reference, not only historical information, but also forward-looking statements within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act, and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or the Exchange Act, and that are subject to the safe harbors created by such sections. Forward-looking statements involve numerous risks and uncertainties. Our actual results may differ from our beliefs, expectations, estimates, and projections and, consequently, you should not rely on these forward-looking statements as predictions of future events. Forward-looking statements are not historical in nature and can be identified by words such as "anticipate," "estimate," "will," "should," "expect," "target," "believe," "intend," "seek," "plan," "goals," "future," "likely," "may," and similar expressions or their negative forms, or by references to strategy, plans, or intentions. These forward-looking statements are subject to risks and uncertainties, including, among other things, the information referred to on page 2 of this prospectus under the caption "Risk Factors." Other risks, uncertainties, and factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from those projected are described below and may be described from time to time in reports we file with the SEC, including our Annual Report on Form 10-K, Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q and Current Reports on Form 8-K, as well as in the other information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus or in any prospectus supplement. Forward-looking statements speak only as of the date they are made, and we undertake no obligation to update or revise any such forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events, or otherwise.

Important factors, among others, that may affect our actual results include:

- changes in interest rates and the market value of our target assets;
- changes in prepayment rates of mortgages underlying our target assets;
- the occurrence, extent and timing of credit losses within our portfolio;
- our exposure to adjustable-rate and negative amortization mortgage loans underlying our target assets;
- the state of the credit markets and other general economic conditions, particularly as they affect the price of earning assets and the credit status of borrowers;

[Table of Contents](#)

- the concentration of the credit risks to which we are exposed;
- legislative and regulatory actions affecting our business;
- the availability and cost of our target assets;
- the availability and cost of financing for our target assets, including repurchase agreement financing, revolving credit facilities and financing through the Federal Home Loan Bank of Des Moines, or the FHLB;
- declines in home prices;
- increases in payment delinquencies and defaults on the mortgages comprising and underlying our target assets;
- changes in liquidity in the market for real estate securities, the re-pricing of credit risk in the capital markets, inaccurate ratings of securities by rating agencies, rating agency downgrades of securities, and increases in the supply of real estate securities available-for-sale;
- changes in the values of securities we own and the impact of adjustments reflecting those changes on our statements of comprehensive income and balance sheets, including our stockholders' equity;
- our ability to generate cash flow from our target assets;
- our ability to effectively execute and realize the benefits of strategic transactions and initiatives we have pursued or may in the future pursue;
- changes in the competitive landscape within our industry, including changes that may affect our ability to attract and retain personnel;
- our exposure to legal and regulatory claims, including litigation arising from our ownership and management of mortgage servicing rights, or MSR, and prior securitization transactions;
- our exposure to counterparties involved in our MSR business and prior securitization transactions and our ability to enforce representations and warranties made by them;
- our ability to acquire MSR and successfully operate our seller-servicer subsidiary and oversee the activities of our subservicers;
- our ability to successfully diversify our business into new asset classes, and manage the new risks to which they may expose us;
- our ability to manage various operational and regulatory risks associated with our business;
- interruptions in or impairments to our communications and information technology systems;
- our ability to maintain appropriate internal controls over financial reporting;
- our ability to establish, adjust and maintain appropriate hedges for the risks in our portfolio;
- our ability to maintain our REIT qualification for U.S. federal income tax purposes; and
- limitations imposed on our business due to our REIT status and our status as exempt from registration under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, or the 1940 Act.

All forward-looking statements included herein attributable to us or any person acting on our behalf are expressly qualified in their entirety by the cautionary statements contained or referred to in this section. Except to the extent required by applicable laws and regulations, we undertake no obligations to update these forward-looking statements to reflect events or circumstances after the date of this prospectus or to reflect the occurrence of unanticipated events. Before you make an investment decision, you should be aware that the occurrence of the events described in the "Risk Factors" section and elsewhere in this prospectus and the documents incorporated herein by reference, may adversely affect us.

## PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

*This summary highlights selected information about us. It may not contain all the information that may be important to you in deciding whether to invest in our securities. You should read this entire prospectus, together with the information incorporated by reference, including the risk factors, financial data and related notes, before making an investment decision.*

### **Our Company**

Two Harbors Investment Corp. is a Maryland corporation focused on investing in, financing and managing Agency residential mortgage-backed securities, or Agency RMBS, non-Agency securities, mortgage servicing rights, or MSR, and other financial assets, which we collectively refer to as our target assets. We operate as a real estate investment trust, or REIT, as defined under the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code. We are externally managed by PRCM Advisers LLC, or PRCM Advisers, which is a wholly owned subsidiary of Pine River Capital Management L.P., or Pine River.

Our objective is to provide attractive risk-adjusted total return to our stockholders over the long term, primarily through dividends and secondarily through capital appreciation. We selectively acquire and manage an investment portfolio of our target assets, which is constructed to generate attractive returns through market cycles. We focus on asset selection and implement a relative value investment approach across various sectors within the mortgage market. Our target assets include the following:

- Agency RMBS, meaning RMBS whose principal and interest payments are guaranteed by the Government National Mortgage Association (or Ginnie Mae), the Federal National Mortgage Association (or Fannie Mae), or the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation (or Freddie Mac);
- Non-Agency securities that are not issued or guaranteed by Ginnie Mae, Fannie Mae or Freddie Mac;
- MSR; and
- Other financial assets comprising approximately 5% to 10% of the portfolio.

We seek to deploy moderate leverage as part of our investment strategy. We generally finance our Agency RMBS and non-Agency securities through short- and long-term borrowings structured as repurchase agreements and advances from the FHLB. We also finance our MSR through repurchase agreements and revolving credit facilities.

We have elected to be treated as a REIT for U.S. federal income tax purposes. To qualify as a REIT, we are required to meet certain investment and operating tests and annual distribution requirements. We generally will not be subject to U.S. federal income taxes on our taxable income to the extent that we annually distribute all of our net taxable income to stockholders, do not participate in prohibited transactions and maintain our intended qualification as a REIT. However, certain activities that we may perform may cause us to earn income which will not be qualifying income for REIT purposes. We have designated certain of our subsidiaries as taxable REIT subsidiaries, or TRSs, as defined in the Code, to engage in such activities, and we may form additional TRSs in the future. We also operate our business in a manner that will permit us to maintain our exemption from registration under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, or the 1940 Act.

Our headquarters are located at 575 Lexington Avenue, Suite 2930, New York, New York 10022 and our telephone number is (612) 629-2500. We maintain a website at [www.twoharborsinvestment.com](http://www.twoharborsinvestment.com); however, the information found on our website is not a part of this prospectus.

## RISK FACTORS

Investing in our securities involves a number of risks. Before making an investment decision, you should carefully read and consider the information set forth under the heading "Risk Factors" in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, any subsequent Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q and any subsequent Current Reports on Form 8-K (which descriptions are incorporated by reference herein), as well as the other information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus or in any prospectus supplement hereto before making a decision to invest in our securities. See "Where You Can Find More Information," below.

### RATIO OF EARNINGS TO COMBINED FIXED CHARGES AND PREFERRED STOCK DIVIDENDS

The following table shows our ratio of earnings to combined fixed charges and preferred stock dividends for each of the periods indicated.

(dollars in thousands)	Year Ended December 31,				
	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013
Income from continuing operations before income taxes	\$ 297,757	\$ 330,235	\$ 475,512	\$ 93,401	\$ 659,451
Fixed charges (interest expenses and preferred stock dividends)	375,310	213,284	141,790	107,450	100,407
Ratio of earnings to fixed charges and preferred stock dividends(1)	1.8	2.5	4.4	1.9	7.6

- (1) The ratios of earnings to combined fixed charges and preferred stock dividends were computed by dividing income from continuing operations before income taxes by fixed charges. For this purpose, earnings consist of net income from continuing operations and fixed charges. Fixed charges consist of our interest expense. Preferred Stock dividends consist of pre-tax amounts required to pay dividends in respect of our Series A, Series B and Series C preferred stock.

### USE OF PROCEEDS

Unless otherwise indicated in an accompanying prospectus supplement, we intend to use the net proceeds received from the sale of the securities offered by this prospectus and the related accompanying prospectus supplement for the purchase of our target assets, including Agency RMBS, non-Agency securities, and other financial assets, in each case subject to our investment guidelines and to the extent consistent with maintaining our REIT qualification, and for general corporate purposes. PRCM Advisers will make determinations as to the percentage of the net proceeds of this offering that will be invested in each of our target assets and the timing of deployment of the net proceeds of this offering. These determinations will depend on prevailing market conditions and may change over time in response to opportunities available in different interest rate, economic and credit environments. Until appropriate assets can be identified, PRCM Advisers may decide to use the net proceeds to pay off our short-term debt or invest the net proceeds in interest-bearing short-term investments, including funds which are consistent with our REIT election. These investments are expected to provide a lower net return than we seek to achieve from our target assets. Prior to the time we have fully used the net proceeds of this offering to acquire our target assets, we may fund our quarterly dividends out of such net proceeds.

Unless otherwise indicated in an accompanying prospectus supplement, we will not receive any proceeds from the sale of securities by selling securityholders.



## DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK

*The following is a summary of the rights and preferences of our capital stock. While we believe that the following descriptions cover the material terms of our capital stock, the descriptions may not contain all of the information that is important to you. We encourage you to read carefully this entire prospectus, our charter and bylaws and the other documents we refer to for a more complete understanding of our capital stock. Copies of our charter and bylaws are incorporated by reference as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. See "Where You Can Find More Information."*

### General

Our charter provides that we may issue up to 450,000,000 shares of common stock, \$0.01 par value per share, and 50,000,000 shares of preferred stock, \$0.01 par value per share. Our charter authorizes our board of directors, with the approval of a majority of the entire board, to amend our charter to increase or decrease the aggregate number of authorized shares of stock or the number of shares of stock of any class or series without stockholder approval. As of February 23, 2018, there were 175,438,857 shares of common stock, 5,750,000 shares of Series A Preferred Stock, 11,500,000 shares of Series B Preferred Stock and 11,800,000 shares of Series C Preferred Stock issued and outstanding. Under Maryland law, stockholders are not generally liable for our debts or obligations.

### Shares of Common Stock

All issued and outstanding shares of our common stock are duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable. Subject to the preferential rights of any other class or series of shares of stock and to the provisions of our charter regarding the restrictions on ownership and transfer of shares of stock, holders of shares of common stock are entitled to receive dividends on such shares of common stock out of assets legally available therefor if, as and when authorized by our board of directors and declared by us, and the holders of shares of our common stock are entitled to share ratably in our assets legally available for distribution to our stockholders in the event of our liquidation, dissolution or winding up after payment of or adequate provision for all our known debts and liabilities.

All issued and outstanding shares of our common stock have been issued by us and do not represent any interest in or obligation of Pine River. Further, the shares are not a deposit or other obligation of any bank, are not an insurance policy of any insurance company and are not insured or guaranteed by the Federal Deposit Insurance Company, any other governmental agency or any insurance company. The shares of common stock do not benefit from any insurance guaranty association coverage or any similar protection.

Subject to the provisions of our charter regarding the restrictions on ownership and transfer of shares of stock and except as may otherwise be specified in the terms of any class or series of shares of preferred stock or common stock, each outstanding share of common stock entitles the holder to one vote on all matters submitted to a vote of stockholders, including the election of directors, and, except as provided with respect to any other class or series of shares of stock, the holders of such shares of common stock will possess the exclusive voting power. There is no cumulative voting in the election of our board of directors, and directors are elected by a majority of all votes cast at a meeting of stockholders duly called and at which a quorum is present, which means that the holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of common stock can elect all of the directors then standing for election, and the holders of the remaining shares will not be able to elect any directors. However, our Bylaws provide that, in the event that the Company's Secretary determines that, as of the record date for the stockholders' meeting, the number of nominees exceeds the number of directors to be elected, then directors will be elected by a plurality of the votes cast at a meeting of stockholders duly called and at which a quorum is present. In such case, each share may be voted for as many individuals as there are directors to be elected and for whose election the share is entitled to be cast.

Holders of shares of our common stock have no preference, conversion, exchange, sinking fund, redemption or appraisal rights and have no preemptive rights to subscribe for any of our securities. Subject to the provisions of our charter regarding the restrictions on ownership and transfer of shares of stock, shares of common stock will have equal dividend, liquidation and other rights.

Under the Maryland General Corporation Law, or MGCL, a Maryland corporation generally cannot dissolve, amend its charter, merge with another entity, transfer all or substantially all of its assets, engage in a share exchange or engage in similar transactions outside the ordinary course of business unless approved by the affirmative vote of stockholders entitled to cast at least two-thirds of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter unless a lesser percentage (but not less than a majority of all of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter) is set forth in the corporation's charter. Our charter provides that these matters (other than certain amendments to the provisions of our charter related to the removal of directors, the restrictions on ownership and transfer of shares of our stock and the requirement of a two-thirds vote for amendment to these provisions) may be approved by a majority of all of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter.

*Transfer Agent and Registrar*

The transfer agent and registrar for our common stock is Equiniti Trust Company.

**Shares of Preferred Stock**

The following description sets forth general terms and provisions of the preferred stock to which any prospectus supplement may relate. The statements below describing the preferred stock are in all respects subject to and qualified in their entirety by reference to our charter, as amended and restated, bylaws, as amended and restated, and any articles supplementary to our charter, designating terms of a series of preferred stock. The preferred stock, when issued, will be validly issued, fully paid, and non-assessable. Because our board of directors has the power to establish the preferences, powers and rights of each series of preferred stock, our board of directors may afford the holders of any series of preferred stock preferences, powers and rights, voting or otherwise, senior to the rights of our common stockholders.

The rights, preferences, privileges and restrictions of each series of preferred stock will be fixed by the articles supplementary to our charter relating to the series. A prospectus supplement, relating to each series, will specify the terms of the preferred stock, as follows:

- the title and stated value of the preferred stock;
- the voting rights of the preferred stock, if applicable;
- the preemptive rights of the preferred stock, if applicable;
- the restrictions on alienability of the preferred stock, if applicable;
- the number of shares offered, the liquidation preference per share and the offering price of the shares;
- liability to further calls or assessment of the preferred stock, if applicable;
- the dividend rate(s), period(s) and payment date(s) or method(s) of calculation applicable to the preferred stock;
- the date from which dividends on the preferred stock will accumulate, if applicable;
- the procedures for any auction and remarketing for the preferred stock;
- the provision for a sinking fund, if any, for the preferred stock;

- the provision for and any restriction on redemption, if applicable, of the preferred stock;
- the provision for and any restriction on repurchase, if applicable, of the preferred stock;
- any listing of the preferred stock on any securities exchange;
- the terms and provisions, if any, upon which the preferred stock will be convertible into common stock, including the conversion price(or manner of calculation) and conversion period;
- the terms under which the rights of the preferred stock may be modified, if applicable;
- any other specific terms, preferences, rights, limitations or restrictions of the preferred stock;
- a discussion of certain material federal income tax considerations applicable to the preferred stock;
- the relative ranking and preferences of the preferred stock as to dividend rights and rights upon the liquidation, dissolution or winding-up of our affairs;
- any limitation on issuance of any series of preferred stock ranking senior to or on a parity with the series of preferred stock as to dividend rights and rights upon the liquidation, dissolution or winding-up of our affairs; and
- any limitations on direct or beneficial ownership and restrictions on transfer of the preferred stock, in each case as may be appropriate to preserve our qualification as a REIT.

#### **Power to Reclassify Our Unissued Shares of Stock**

Our charter authorizes our board of directors to classify and reclassify any unissued shares of common or preferred stock into other classes or series of shares of stock. Prior to issuance of shares of each class or series, our board of directors is required by Maryland law and by our charter to set, subject to our charter restrictions on ownership and transfer of shares of stock and to the express terms of any class or series of stock outstanding at the time, the terms, preferences, conversion or other rights, voting powers, restrictions, limitations as to dividends or other distributions, qualifications and terms and conditions of redemption for each class or series. Therefore, among other things, our board could authorize the issuance of shares of common or preferred stock with terms and conditions that could have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change in control or other transaction that might involve a premium price for shares of our common stock or otherwise be in the best interest of our stockholders. No shares of preferred stock are presently outstanding, and we have no present plans to issue any shares of preferred stock.

#### **Power to Increase or Decrease Authorized Shares of Common Stock and Issue Additional Shares of Common and Preferred Stock**

We believe that the power of our board of directors to amend our charter to increase or decrease the number of authorized shares of stock, to issue additional authorized but unissued shares of common or preferred stock and to classify or reclassify unissued shares of common or preferred stock and thereafter to issue such classified or reclassified shares of stock will provide us with increased flexibility in structuring possible future financings and acquisitions and in meeting other needs that might arise. The additional classes or series, as well as the shares of common stock, will be available for issuance without further action by our stockholders, unless such action is required by applicable law or the rules of any stock exchange or automated quotation system on which our securities may be listed or traded. Although our board of directors does not intend to do so, the board could authorize us to issue a class or series that could, depending upon the terms of the particular class or series, delay, defer or prevent a change in control or other transaction that might involve a premium price for shares of our common stock or otherwise be in the best interest of our stockholders.

## DESCRIPTION OF DEPOSITARY SHARES

### General

We may issue depositary shares, each of which would represent a fractional interest of a share of a particular series of preferred stock. We will deposit shares of preferred stock represented by depositary shares under a separate deposit agreement among the company, a preferred stock depositary and the holders of the depositary shares. Subject to the terms of the deposit agreement, each owner of a depositary share will possess, in proportion to the fractional interest of a share of preferred stock represented by the depositary share, all the rights and preferences of the preferred stock represented by the depositary shares. Depositary receipts will evidence the depositary shares issued pursuant to the deposit agreement. Immediately after the company issues and delivers preferred stock to a preferred stock depositary, the preferred stock depositary will issue the depositary receipts.

### Dividends and Other Distributions

The depositary will distribute all cash dividends on the preferred stock to the record holders of the depositary shares. Holders of depositary shares generally must file proofs, certificates and other information and pay charges and expenses of the depositary in connection with distributions. If a distribution on the preferred stock is other than in cash and it is feasible for the depositary to distribute the property it receives, the depositary will distribute the property to the record holders of the depositary shares. If such a distribution is not feasible, the depositary, with our approval, may sell the property and distribute the net proceeds from the sale to the holders of the depositary shares.

### Withdrawal of Stock

Unless we have previously called the underlying preferred stock for redemption or the holder of the depositary shares has converted such shares, a holder of depositary shares may surrender them at the corporate trust office of the depositary in exchange for whole or fractional shares of the underlying preferred stock together with any money or other property represented by the depositary shares. Once a holder has exchanged the depositary shares, the holder may not redeposit the preferred stock and receive depositary shares again. If a depositary receipt presented for exchange into preferred stock represents more shares of preferred stock than the number to be withdrawn, the depositary will deliver a new depositary receipt for the excess number of depositary shares.

### Redemption of Depositary Shares

Whenever we redeem shares of preferred stock held by a depositary, the depositary will redeem the corresponding amount of depositary shares with funds it receives from us for the preferred stock. The depositary will notify the record holders of the depositary shares to be redeemed not less than 30 days nor more than 60 days before the date fixed for redemption at the holders' addresses appearing in the depositary's books. The redemption price per depositary share will be equal to the applicable fraction of the redemption price and any other amounts payable with respect to the preferred stock. If we intend to redeem less than all of the underlying preferred stock, we and the depositary will select the depositary shares to be redeemed on as nearly a pro rata basis as practicable without creating fractional depositary shares or by any other equitable method determined by us that preserves our REIT status.

On the redemption date:

- all dividends relating to the shares of preferred stock called for redemption will cease to accrue;
- we and the depositary will no longer deem the depositary shares called for redemption to be outstanding; and

- all rights of the holders of the depositary shares called for redemption will cease, except the right to receive any money payable upon the redemption and any money or other property to which the holders of the depositary shares are entitled upon redemption.

#### **Voting of the Preferred Stock**

When a depositary receives notice regarding a meeting at which the holders of the underlying preferred stock have the right to vote, it will mail that information to the holders of the depositary shares. Each record holder of depositary shares on the record date may then instruct the depositary to exercise its voting rights for the amount of preferred stock represented by that holder's depositary shares. The depositary will vote in accordance with these instructions. The depositary will abstain from voting to the extent it does not receive specific instructions from the holders of depositary shares. A depositary will not be responsible for any failure to carry out any instruction to vote, or for the manner or effect of any vote, as long as any action or non-action is in good faith and does not result from negligence or willful misconduct of the depositary.

#### **Liquidation Preference**

In the event of our liquidation, dissolution or winding up, a holder of depositary shares will receive the fraction of the liquidation preference accorded each share of underlying preferred stock represented by the depositary share.

#### **Conversion of Preferred Stock**

Depositary shares will not themselves be convertible into common stock or any other securities or property of the company. However, if the underlying preferred stock is convertible, holders of depositary shares may surrender them to the depositary with written instructions to convert the preferred stock represented by their depositary shares into whole shares of common stock, other shares of our preferred stock or other shares of stock, as applicable. Upon receipt of these instructions and any amounts payable in connection with a conversion, we will convert the preferred stock using the same procedures as those provided for delivery of preferred stock. If a holder of depositary shares converts only part of its depositary shares, the depositary will issue a new depositary receipt for any depositary shares not converted. We will not issue fractional shares of common stock upon conversion. If a conversion will result in the issuance of a fractional share, we will pay an amount in cash equal to the value of the fractional interest based upon the closing price of the common stock on the last business day prior to the conversion.

#### **Amendment and Termination of a Deposit Agreement**

The company and the depositary may amend any form of depositary receipt evidencing depositary shares and any provision of a deposit agreement. However, unless the existing holders of at least two-thirds of the applicable depositary shares then outstanding have approved the amendment, we and the depositary may not make any amendment that:

- would materially and adversely alter the rights of the holders of depositary shares; or
- would be materially and adversely inconsistent with the rights granted to the holders of the underlying preferred stock.

Subject to exceptions in the deposit agreement and except in order to comply with applicable law, no amendment may impair the right of any holders of depositary shares to surrender their depositary shares with instructions to deliver the underlying preferred stock and all money and other property represented by the depositary shares. Every holder of outstanding depositary shares at the time any

amendment becomes effective who continues to hold the depositary shares will be deemed to consent and agree to the amendment and to be bound by the amended deposit agreement.

We may terminate a deposit agreement upon not less than 30 days prior written notice to the depositary if:

- the termination is necessary to preserve our REIT status; or
- a majority of each series of preferred stock affected by the termination consents to the termination.

In addition, a deposit agreement will automatically terminate if:

- we have redeemed all underlying preferred stock subject to the agreement;
- a final distribution of the underlying preferred stock in connection with any liquidation, dissolution or winding up has occurred, and the depositary has distributed the distribution to the holders of the depositary shares; or
- each share of the underlying preferred stock has been converted into other capital stock of the company not represented by depositary shares.

#### **Expenses of a Preferred Stock Depositary**

We will pay all transfer and other taxes and governmental charges and expenses arising in connection with a deposit agreement. In addition, we will generally pay the fees and expenses of a depositary in connection with the performance of its duties. However, holders of depositary shares will pay the fees and expenses of a depositary for any duties requested by the holders that the deposit agreement does not expressly require the depositary to perform.

#### **Resignation and Removal of Depositary**

A depositary may resign at any time by delivering to us notice of its election to resign. We may also remove a depositary at any time. Any resignation or removal will take effect upon the appointment of a successor depositary. We will appoint a successor depositary within 60 days after delivery of the notice of resignation or removal. The successor must be a bank or trust company with its principal office in the U.S. and have a combined capital and surplus of at least \$50 million.

#### **Miscellaneous**

The depositary will forward to the holders of depositary shares any reports and communications from us with respect to the underlying preferred stock. Neither the depositary nor the company will be liable if any law or any circumstances beyond their control prevent or delay them from performing their obligations under a deposit agreement. The obligations of the company and a depositary under a deposit agreement will be limited to performing their duties in good faith and without negligence and, in regard to voting of preferred stock, gross negligence or willful misconduct. Neither the company nor a depositary will be required to prosecute or defend any legal proceeding with respect to any depositary shares or the underlying preferred stock unless they are furnished with satisfactory indemnity.

The company and any depositary may rely on the written advice of counsel or accountants, or information provided by persons presenting shares of preferred stock for deposit, holders of depositary shares or other persons they believe in good faith to be competent, and on documents they believe in good faith to be genuine and signed by a proper party. In the event a depositary receives conflicting claims, requests or instructions from us and any holders of depositary shares, the depositary will be entitled to act on the claims, requests or instructions received from us.

**Depository**

The prospectus supplement will identify the depository for the depository shares.

**Listing of the Depository Shares**

The applicable prospectus supplement will specify whether or not the depository shares will be listed on any securities exchange.

## DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES

### General

The following description of the terms of our senior debt securities and subordinated debt securities, together, referred to as the debt securities, sets forth certain general terms and provisions of the debt securities to which any prospectus supplement may relate. Unless otherwise noted, the general terms and provisions of our debt securities discussed below apply to both our senior debt securities and our subordinated debt securities. Our debt securities may be issued from time to time in one or more series. The particular terms of any series of debt securities and the extent to which the general provisions may apply to a particular series of debt securities will be described in the prospectus supplement relating to that series.

The senior debt securities will be issued under an indenture between us and The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., as "Senior Indenture Trustee," referred to as the senior indenture. The subordinated debt securities will be issued under an indenture between us and a Subordinated Indenture Trustee, referred to as the subordinated indenture and, together with the senior indenture, the indentures. The Senior Indenture Trustee and the Subordinated Indenture Trustee are both referred to, individually, as the Trustee. The senior debt securities will constitute our unsecured and unsubordinated obligations and the subordinated debt securities will constitute our unsecured and subordinated obligations. A detailed description of the subordination provisions is provided below under the caption "—Ranking and Subordination—Subordination." In general, however, if we declare bankruptcy, holders of the senior debt securities will be paid in full before the holders of subordinated debt securities will receive anything.

The statements set forth below are brief summaries of certain provisions contained in the indentures, which summaries do not purport to be complete and are qualified in their entirety by reference to the indentures, which are filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part. Terms used herein that are otherwise not defined shall have the meanings given to them in the indentures. Such defined terms shall be incorporated herein by reference.

The indentures will not limit the amount of debt securities that may be issued under the applicable indenture, and debt securities may be issued under the applicable indenture up to the aggregate principal amount that may be authorized from time to time by us. Any such limit applicable to a particular series will be specified in the prospectus supplement relating to that series.

The prospectus supplement relating to any series of debt securities in respect of which this prospectus is being delivered will contain the following terms, among others, for each such series of debt securities:

- the title of the debt securities of such series;
- the person to whom any interest on a debt security of such series is payable, if other than the registered holder at the close of business on the regular record date for such interest;
- the date or dates on which the principal amount of the debt securities of such series is payable;
- the rate or rates (or manner of calculation thereof) at which the debt securities of such series will bear interest, if any, the date or dates from which interest will accrue and the interest payment dates and regular record dates for the debt securities of such series;
- the place or places where the principal of and any premium and interest on debt securities of such series is payable;
- the period or periods within which the redemption price or prices or the repayment price or prices, as the case may be, at which, and the terms and conditions upon which, the debt



securities of such series may be redeemed or repaid at the company's option or the option of the holder of such debt securities;

- the obligation, if any, of the company to purchase the debt securities of such series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions or at the option of a holder of such debt securities and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which such debt securities of such series will be purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;
- if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which the debt securities of such series will be issuable;
- provisions, if any, with regard to the conversion or exchange of the debt securities of such series, at the option of the holders of such debt securities or the company, as the case may be, for or into new securities of a different series or other securities;
- if other than U.S. dollars, the currency or currencies or units based on or related to currencies in which the debt securities of such series will be denominated and in which payments of principal of, and any premium and interest on, such debt securities shall or may be payable;
- if the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the debt securities of such series are to be payable, at the election of the company or a holder of such debt securities, in a currency (including a composite currency) other than that in which such debt securities are stated to be payable, the period or periods within which, and the terms and conditions upon which, such election may be made;
- if the amount of payments of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the debt securities of such series may be determined with reference to an index based on a currency (including a composite currency) other than that in which such debt securities are stated to be payable, the manner in which such amounts shall be determined;
- any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the debt securities of such series which may be authenticated and delivered under the applicable indenture;
- provisions, if any, related to the exchange of the debt securities of such series, at the option of the holders of such debt securities, for other securities of the same series of the same aggregate principal amount or of a different authorized series or different authorized denomination or denominations, or both;
- provisions, if any, relating to the appointment by us of an authenticating agent other than in the location of the office of the Trustee, with power to act on behalf of the Trustee with respect to the authentication and delivery of a series of debt securities in connection with such transactions as are specified in the indenture or any prospectus supplement;
- the portion of the principal amount of the debt securities of such series, if other than the principal amount thereof, which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof or provable in bankruptcy, as more fully described under the section "—Events of Default, Notice and Waiver" below;
- any event of default with respect to the debt securities of such series, if not set forth in the applicable indenture, and any additions, deletions or other changes to the events of default set forth in the applicable indenture that shall be applicable to the debt securities of such series;
- any covenant solely for the benefit of the debt securities of such series and any additions, deletions or other changes to the provisions of the applicable indenture more fully described under the section "—Consolidation, Merger, Conveyance or Transfer on Certain Terms" below, under the section "—Certain Covenants" below, the section of the applicable indenture

containing the defined terms or any definitions relating to such provisions of the applicable indenture that would otherwise be applicable to the debt securities of such series;

- if the provisions of the applicable indenture more fully described under the section "—Defeasance" below will not be applicable to the debt securities of such series, and if such provisions shall be applicable to any covenant or event of default specified in the prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities that has not already been established in the applicable indenture;
- whether the debt securities of such series will be issued in whole or in part in the form of global securities and, if so, the identity of the depositary with respect to such global securities and the terms and conditions, if any, upon which such global securities may be exchanged for other securities;
- if the debt securities of such series will be guaranteed, the terms and conditions of such guarantees and provisions for the accession of the guarantors to certain obligations under the applicable indenture;
- with respect to subordinated debt securities only, the amendment or modification of the subordination provisions in the subordinated indenture with respect to the debt securities of such series; and
- any other specific terms.

We may issue debt securities of any series at various times and we may reopen any series for further issuances from time to time without notice to existing holders of securities of that series.

Some of the debt securities may be issued as original issue discount, or OID, debt securities. OID debt securities bear no interest or bear interest at below-market rates. These are sold at a discount below their stated principal amount. If we issue these securities, the prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities will describe any special tax, accounting or other information which we think is important. We encourage you to consult with your own tax and financial advisors on these important matters.

Unless we specify otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, the covenants contained in the indentures will not provide special protection to holders of debt securities if we enter into a highly leveraged transaction, recapitalization or restructuring.

Unless otherwise set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, interest on outstanding debt securities will be paid to holders of record on the regular record date as specified in the applicable debt security. Unless otherwise specified in the prospectus supplement, debt securities will be issued in fully registered form only. Unless otherwise specified in the prospectus supplement, the principal amount of the debt securities will be payable at the corporate trust office of the Trustee in New York, New York. The debt securities may be presented for transfer or exchange at such office unless otherwise specified in the prospectus supplement, subject to the limitations provided in the applicable indenture, without any service charge, but we may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charges payable in connection therewith.

## **Ranking and Subordination**

### *General*

The debt securities and the related guarantees will effectively rank junior in right of payment to any of our or the guarantors' current and future secured obligations to the extent of the value of the assets securing such obligations. The debt securities and the guarantees will be effectively subordinated to all existing and future liabilities, including indebtedness and trade payables, of our non-guarantor

subsidiaries. Unless otherwise set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, the indentures will not limit the amount of unsecured indebtedness or other liabilities that can be incurred by our non-guarantor subsidiaries.

*Ranking of Debt Securities*

The senior debt securities described in this prospectus will be unsecured, senior obligations of the company and will rank equally with the company's other unsecured and unsubordinated obligations. Any guarantees of the senior debt securities will be unsecured and senior obligations of each of the guarantors, and will rank equally with all other unsecured and unsubordinated obligations of such guarantors. The subordinated debt securities will be unsecured, subordinated obligations of the company and any guarantees of the subordinated debt securities will be unsecured and subordinated obligations of each of the guarantors.

*Subordination*

If issued, the indebtedness evidenced by the subordinated debt securities will be subordinate to the prior payment in full of all our Senior Indebtedness (as defined below). During the continuance beyond any applicable grace period of any default in the payment of principal, premium, interest or any other payment due on any of our Senior Indebtedness, we may not make any payment of principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on the subordinated debt securities, except for certain sinking fund payments made in connection with the redemption of debt securities prior to such default and except for payments made in connection with a defeasance with monies deposited with the Trustee prior to such default. In addition, upon any payment or distribution of our assets to creditors upon any dissolution, winding up, liquidation or reorganization, the payment of the principal of, or premium, if any, and interest on the subordinated debt securities will be subordinated to the extent provided in the subordinated indenture in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all our Senior Indebtedness. Because of this subordination, if we dissolve or otherwise liquidate, holders of our subordinated debt securities may receive less, ratably, than holders of our Senior Indebtedness. The subordination provisions do not prevent the occurrence of an event of default under the subordinated indenture.

The subordination provisions also apply in the same way to any guarantor with respect to the Senior Indebtedness of such guarantor.

The term "Senior Indebtedness" of a person means with respect to such person the principal of, premium, if any, interest on, and any other payment due pursuant to any of the following, whether outstanding on the date of the subordinated indenture or incurred by that person in the future:

- all of the indebtedness of that person for borrowed money, including any indebtedness secured by a mortgage or other lien which is (1) given to secure all or part of the purchase price of property subject to the mortgage or lien, whether given to the vendor of that property or to another lender, or (2) existing on property at the time that person acquires it;
- all of the indebtedness of that person evidenced by notes, debentures, bonds or other similar instruments sold by that person for money;
- all of the lease obligations which are capitalized on the books of that person in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
- all indebtedness of others of the kinds described in the first two bullet points above and all lease obligations of others of the kind described in the third bullet point above, in each case, that the person, in any manner, assumes or guarantees or that the person in effect guarantees through an agreement to purchase, whether that agreement is contingent or otherwise; and

- all renewals, extensions or refundings of indebtedness of the kinds described in the first, second or fourth bullet point above and all renewals or extensions of leases of the kinds described in the third or fourth bullet point above; *unless*, in the case of any particular indebtedness, lease, renewal, extension or refunding, the instrument or lease creating or evidencing it or the assumption or guarantee relating to it expressly provides that such indebtedness, lease, renewal, extension or refunding is not superior in right of payment to the subordinated debt securities. Our senior debt securities, and any unsubordinated guarantee obligations of ours or any guarantor to which we and the guarantors are a party, including the guarantors' guarantees of our debt securities and other indebtedness for borrowed money, constitute Senior Indebtedness for purposes of the subordinated indenture.

Pursuant to the subordinated indenture, the subordinated indenture may not be amended, at any time, to alter the subordination provisions of any outstanding subordinated debt securities without the consent of the requisite holders of each outstanding series or class of Senior Indebtedness (as determined in accordance with the instrument governing such Senior Indebtedness) that would be adversely affected thereby.

#### **Consolidation, Merger, Conveyance or Transfer on Certain Terms**

Except as described in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to such debt securities, we will not consolidate with or merge into any other entity or convey or transfer our properties and assets substantially as an entirety to any entity, unless:

- (1) the entity formed by such consolidation or into which we are merged or the entity that acquires by conveyance or transfer our properties and assets substantially as an entirety shall be organized and existing under the laws of the U.S. or any State or the District of Columbia, and will expressly assume, by supplemental indenture, executed and delivered to the Trustee, in form reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on all the debt securities and the performance of every covenant of the applicable indenture (as supplemented from time to time) on our part to be performed or observed;
- (2) immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Event of Default (as defined below), and no event which, after notice or lapse of time, or both, would become an Event of Default, shall have happened and be continuing; and
- (3) we have delivered to the Trustee an officers' certificate and an opinion of counsel each stating that such consolidation, merger, conveyance or transfer and such supplemental indenture comply with the requirements set forth in paragraphs (1) and (2) above and that all conditions precedent relating to such transaction have been complied with.

Upon any consolidation or merger, or any conveyance or transfer of our properties and assets substantially as an entirety as set forth above, the successor person formed by such consolidation or into which we are merged or to which such conveyance or transfer is made shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of ours under the applicable indenture with the same effect as if such successor had been named in the applicable indenture. In the event of any such conveyance or transfer, we, as the predecessor, shall be discharged from all obligations and covenants under the applicable indenture and the debt securities issued under such indenture and may be dissolved, wound up or liquidated at any time thereafter.

#### **Certain Covenants**

Any covenants pertaining to a series of debt securities will be set forth in a prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities.

Except as described in the prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, the indentures and the debt securities do not contain any covenants or other provisions designed to afford holders of debt securities protection in the event of a recapitalization or highly leveraged transaction involving us.

### **Certain Definitions**

The following are certain of the terms defined in the indentures:

"*Significant Subsidiary*" means any Subsidiary which would be a "significant subsidiary" as defined in Article 1, Rule 1-02 of Regulation S-X, promulgated pursuant to the Securities Act, as in effect on the date of the applicable indenture.

"*Subsidiary*" means, with respect to any person, any corporation more than 50% of the voting stock of which is owned directly or indirectly by such person, and any partnership, association, joint venture or other entity in which such person owns more than 50% of the equity interests or has the power to elect a majority of the board of directors or other governing body.

### **Redemption**

Unless we specify otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, we may redeem any of the debt securities as a whole at any time or in part from time to time, at our option, on at least 15 days, but not more than 45 days, prior notice mailed to the registered address of each holder of the debt securities to be redeemed, at the price specified in the debt security at which it is to be redeemed. If specified in the applicable prospectus supplement for a series of debt securities, we may rescind the redemption of such debt securities upon the occurrence of any of the following: (a) a general suspension of trading or limitation on prices for securities on the securities exchange on which the shares of our stock are traded for more than 6.5 consecutive trading hours, (b) the decline of the Dow Jones Industrial Average or the S&P 500 (or any successor index) by more than certain percentages; (c) a banking moratorium or suspension of payments in respect of banks declared by federal or state authorities; or (d) an act of terrorism or commencement of war or armed hostilities or other national or international calamity involving the United States which in our reasonable judgment could have a material adverse effect on the market for our common stock.

On and after the redemption date, interest will cease to accrue on the debt securities or any portion thereof called for redemption, unless we default in the payment of the Redemption Price, and any right to convert such debt securities shall terminate. On or before the redemption date, we shall deposit with a paying agent or the applicable Trustee, or segregate and hold in trust, money sufficient to pay the Redemption Price of the debt securities to be redeemed on such date. If we elect to redeem less than all of the debt securities of a series, then the Trustee will select the particular debt securities of such series to be redeemed in a manner it deems appropriate and fair.

### **Defeasance**

Except as otherwise set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, each indenture will provide that, at our option,

- (a) we and any applicable guarantors will be discharged from any and all obligations in respect of any series of debt securities (except in each case for certain obligations to register the transfer or exchange of debt securities, replace stolen, lost or mutilated debt securities, maintain paying agencies and hold monies for payment in trust), or
- (b) (i) we need not comply with certain covenants contained in the indenture and any prospectus supplement relating to such debt securities, including covenants relating to maintaining our legal existence and complying with certain restrictions on our ability to consolidate or merger

with, or transfer our properties and assets substantially as an entirety to, another person, (ii) the guarantors will be released from the guarantees and (iii) certain Events of Default (other than those arising out of the failure to pay interest or principal on the debt securities of that series and certain events of bankruptcy, insolvency and reorganization) will no longer constitute Events of Default with respect to such series of debt securities,

in each case, if:

- (1) we deposit with the Trustee, in trust, money or the equivalent in securities of the government which issued the currency in which the debt securities are denominated or government agencies backed by the full faith and credit of such government, or a combination thereof, which through the payment of interest thereon and principal thereof in accordance with their terms will provide money in an amount sufficient to pay all the principal (including any mandatory sinking fund payments) of, and interest on, such series on the dates such payments are due in accordance with the terms of such series;
- (2) no event of default or event (including such deposit) which with notice or lapse of time would become an event of default with respect to the debt securities of such series shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit (other than an event of default resulting from the borrowing of funds to be applied to such deposit);
- (3) we deliver to the Trustee an opinion of counsel to the effect that the deposit and related defeasance would not cause the holders of such series to recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes and, in the case of a discharge pursuant to clause (a) above, accompanied by a ruling to such effect received from or published by the U.S. Internal Revenue Service, or IRS;
- (4) we deliver to the Trustee an officers' certificate stating that such deposit was not made by us with the intent of preferring the holders over other creditors of ours or with the intent of defeating, hindering, delaying or defrauding creditors of ours or others;
- (5) we deliver to the Trustee an officers' certificate stating that all conditions precedent set forth in the indenture relating to the satisfaction and discharge of the indenture with respect to the debt securities of such series have been satisfied; and
- (6) we deliver to the Trustee an opinion of counsel to the effect that the satisfaction and discharge of the indenture with respect to the debt securities of such series is authorized and permitted under the indenture and all conditions precedent set forth in the indenture relating to such satisfaction and discharge have been satisfied.

#### **Events of Default, Notice and Waiver**

Except as otherwise set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, each indenture will provide that, if an Event of Default specified therein with respect to any series of debt securities issued thereunder shall have happened and be continuing, either the Trustee thereunder or the holders of 33<sup>1</sup>/<sub>3</sub>% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of such series (or 33<sup>1</sup>/<sub>3</sub>% in aggregate principal amount of all outstanding debt securities under such indenture, in the case of certain Events of Default affecting all series of debt securities issued under such indenture) may declare the principal of all the debt securities of such series to be due and payable; *provided*, that upon the occurrence of an event of default due to bankruptcy or insolvency proceedings, such amounts shall be immediately due and payable without action by the Trustee or the holders of such series of debt securities.

[Table of Contents](#)

Except as otherwise set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, an "Event of Default" in respect of any series will be defined in the indentures as being any one of the following events:

- default for 30 days in payment of any interest with respect to such series;
- default in payment of principal of, or premium, if any, on, or any sinking or purchase fund or analogous obligation with respect to, debt securities of such series when due at their stated maturity, by declaration or acceleration, when called for redemption or otherwise;
- default for 90 days after written notice to us by the Trustee thereunder or to us and the Trustee by holders of 33<sup>1</sup>/<sub>3</sub>% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of such series in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or warranty pertaining to debt securities of such series;
- certain events of bankruptcy, insolvency and reorganization with respect to us or any Significant Subsidiary of ours which is organized under the laws of the U.S. or any political sub-division thereof or the entry of an order ordering the winding up or liquidation of our affairs; and
- any other event of default specified in the prospectus supplement for a series of debt securities.

Each indenture will provide that the Trustee thereunder will, within 90 days after the occurrence of a default with respect to the debt securities of any series issued under such indenture, give to the holders of the debt securities of such series notice of all uncured and unwaived defaults known to it; provided, however, that, except in the case of default in the payment of principal of, premium, if any, or interest, if any, on any of the debt securities of such series, the Trustee will be protected in withholding such notice if it in good faith determines that the withholding of such notice is in the interests of the holders of the debt securities of such series. The term "default" for the purpose of this provision means any event which is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to debt securities of such series.

Each indenture will contain provisions entitling the Trustee under such indenture, subject to the duty of the Trustee during an Event of Default to act with the required standard of care, to be indemnified to its reasonable satisfaction by the holders of the debt securities before proceeding to exercise any right or power under the applicable indenture at the request of holders of such debt securities.

Each indenture will provide that the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series issued under such indenture may direct the time, method and place of conducting proceedings for remedies available to the Trustee or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee in respect of such series, subject to certain conditions.

Except as otherwise set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to the debt securities, in certain cases, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series may rescind, on behalf of the holders of all debt securities of such series, a declaration of acceleration resulting from an Event of Default with respect to the debt securities of such series except, among other things, a declaration of acceleration resulting from an Event of Default not theretofore cured in payment of the principal of, or premium, if any, or interest, if any, on any of the senior debt securities of such series or payment of any sinking or purchase fund or analogous obligations with respect to such senior debt securities.

Each indenture will include a covenant that we will file annually with the Trustee a certificate of no default or specifying any default that exists.

## Modification of the Indentures

Except as set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to the debt securities, we and the Trustee may, without the consent of the holders of the debt securities issued under the indenture governing such debt securities, enter into indentures supplemental to the applicable indenture for, among others, one or more of the following purposes:

- (1) to evidence the succession of another person to us or to a guarantor, if any, and the assumption by such successor of our or the guarantor's obligations under the applicable indenture and the debt securities of any series;
- (2) to add to our covenants or those of any guarantor, if any, or to surrender any of our rights or powers or those of any guarantor for the benefit of the holders of debt securities of any or all series issued under such indenture;
- (3) to cure any ambiguity, to correct or supplement any provision in the applicable indenture which may be inconsistent with any other provision therein, or to make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under such indenture;
- (4) to add to the applicable indenture any provisions that may be expressly permitted by the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, or the TIA, excluding the provisions referred to in Section 316(a)(2) of the TIA as in effect at the date as of which the applicable indenture was executed or any corresponding provision in any similar federal statute hereafter enacted;
- (5) to establish the form or terms of any series of debt securities to be issued under the applicable indenture, to provide for the issuance of any series of debt securities and/or to add to the rights of the holders of debt securities;
- (6) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of any successor Trustee with respect to one or more series of debt securities or to add or change any of the provisions of the applicable indenture as shall be necessary to facilitate the administration of the trusts thereunder by one or more trustees in accordance with the applicable indenture;
- (7) to provide any additional Events of Default;
- (8) to provide for uncertificated securities in addition to or in place of certificated securities; provided that the uncertificated securities are issued in registered form for certain federal tax purposes;
- (9) to provide for the terms and conditions of converting those debt securities that are convertible into common stock or another such similar security;
- (10) to secure any series of debt securities;
- (11) to add guarantees in respect of any series or all of the debt securities;
- (12) to make any change necessary to comply with any requirement of the SEC in connection with the qualification of the applicable indenture or any supplemental indenture under the TIA; and
- (13) to make any other change that does not adversely affect the rights of the holders of the debt securities.

No supplemental indenture for the purpose identified in clauses (2), (3) or (5) above may be entered into if to do so would adversely affect the rights of the holders of debt securities of any series issued under the same indenture in any material respect.

Except as set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, each indenture will contain provisions permitting us and the Trustee under such indenture, with the consent



of the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of all series issued under such indenture to be affected voting as a single class, to execute supplemental indentures for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing or eliminating any of the provisions of the applicable indenture or modifying the rights of the holders of the debt securities of such series to be affected, except that no such supplemental indenture may, without the consent of each of the holders of affected debt securities, among other things:

- change the maturity of the principal of, or the maturity of any premium on, or any installment of interest on, any such debt security, or reduce the principal amount or the interest or any premium of any such debt securities, or change the method of computing the amount of principal or interest on any such debt securities on any date or change any place of payment where, or the currency in which, any debt securities or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after the maturity of principal or premium, as the case may be, or alter the provisions of the indenture so as to adversely affect the terms, if any, of conversion of any series of debt securities into our common stock or other marketable securities;
- reduce the percentage in principal amount of any such debt securities the consent of whose holders is required for any supplemental indenture, waiver of compliance with certain provisions of the applicable indenture or certain defaults under the applicable indenture;
- modify any of the provisions of the applicable indenture related to (i) the requirement that the holders of debt securities issued under such indenture consent to certain amendments of the applicable indenture, (ii) the waiver of past defaults and (iii) the waiver of certain covenants, except to increase the percentage of holders required to make such amendments or grant such waivers;
- amend or modify certain provisions of the indenture relating to guarantees, if any, and the obligations of guarantors thereunder; or
- impair or adversely affect the right of any holder to institute suit for the enforcement of any payment on, or with respect to, such senior debt securities on or after the maturity of such debt securities.

In addition, the subordinated indenture will provide that we may not make any change in the terms of the subordination of the subordinated debt securities of any series in a manner adverse in any material respect to the holders of any series of subordinated debt securities without the consent of each holder of subordinated debt securities that would be adversely affected.

#### **The Trustee**

The Trustee shall be named in the applicable prospectus supplement.

#### **Governing Law**

The indentures will be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the laws of the State of New York.

#### **Global Securities**

We may issue debt securities through global securities. A global security is a security, typically held by a depository, that represents the beneficial interests of a number of purchasers of the security. If we do issue global securities, the following procedures will apply.

We will deposit global securities with the depository identified in the prospectus supplement. After we issue a global security, the depository will credit on its book-entry registration and transfer system

the respective principal amounts of the debt securities represented by the global security to the accounts of persons who have accounts with the depository. These account holders are known as "participants." The underwriters or agents participating in the distribution of the debt securities will designate the accounts to be credited. Only a participant or a person who holds an interest through a participant may be the beneficial owner of a global security. Ownership of beneficial interests in the global security will be shown on, and the transfer of that ownership will be effected only through, records maintained by the depository and its participants.

We and the Trustee will treat the depository or its nominee as the sole owner or holder of the debt securities represented by a global security. Except as set forth below, owners of beneficial interests in a global security will not be entitled to have the debt securities represented by the global security registered in their names. They also will not receive or be entitled to receive physical delivery of the debt securities in definitive form and will not be considered the owners or holders of the debt securities.

Principal, any premium and any interest payments on debt securities represented by a global security registered in the name of a depository or its nominee will be made to the depository or its nominee as the registered owner of the global security. None of us, the Trustee or any paying agent will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests in the global security or maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to the beneficial ownership interests.

We expect that the depository, upon receipt of any payments, will immediately credit participants' accounts with payments in amounts proportionate to their respective beneficial interests in the principal amount of the global security as shown on the depository's records. We also expect that payments by participants to owners of beneficial interests in the global security will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with the securities held for the accounts of customers registered in "street names," and will be the responsibility of the participants.

If the depository is at any time unwilling or unable to continue as depository and a successor depository is not appointed by us within 90 days, we will issue registered securities in exchange for the global security. In addition, we may at any time in our sole discretion determine not to have any of the debt securities of a series represented by global securities. In that event, we will issue debt securities of that series in definitive form in exchange for the global securities.

## RESTRICTIONS ON OWNERSHIP AND TRANSFER

In order for us to qualify as a REIT under the Code, shares of our stock must be beneficially owned by 100 or more persons during at least 335 days of a taxable year of 12 months (other than the first year for which an election to be a REIT has been made) or during a proportionate part of a shorter taxable year. Also, not more than 50% of the value of the outstanding shares of stock may be owned, directly or indirectly, by five or fewer individuals (as defined in the Code to include certain entities) during the last half of a taxable year (other than the first year for which an election to be a REIT has been made).

Our charter contains restrictions limiting the ownership and transfer of shares of our common stock and other outstanding shares of stock. The relevant sections of our charter provide that, subject to the exceptions described below, no person or entity may own, or be deemed to own by virtue of the applicable constructive ownership provisions of the Code, more than 9.8% by value or number of shares, whichever is more restrictive, of our outstanding shares of common stock (the common share ownership limit), or 9.8% by value or number of shares, whichever is more restrictive, of the aggregate of the outstanding shares of our capital stock (the aggregate share ownership limit). The common share ownership limit and the aggregate share ownership limit are collectively referred to herein as the "ownership limits." A person or entity that becomes subject to the ownership limits by virtue of a violative transfer that results in a transfer to a trust, as set forth below, is referred to as a "purported beneficial transferee" if, had the violative transfer been effective, the person or entity would have been a record owner and beneficial owner or solely a beneficial owner of shares of our stock, or is referred to as a "purported record transferee" if, had the violative transfer been effective, the person or entity would have been solely a record owner of shares of our stock.

The constructive ownership rules under the Code are complex and may cause shares of stock owned actually or constructively by a group of related individuals and/or entities to be owned constructively by one individual or entity. As a result, the acquisition of less than 9.8% by value or number of shares, whichever is more restrictive, of our outstanding shares of common stock, or 9.8% by value or number of shares, whichever is more restrictive, of our outstanding capital stock (or the acquisition of an interest in an entity that owns, actually or constructively, shares of our stock) by an individual or entity, could, nevertheless, cause that individual or entity, or another individual or entity, to own constructively in excess of 9.8% by value or number of shares, whichever is more restrictive, of our outstanding shares of common stock, or 9.8% by value or number of shares, whichever is more restrictive, of our outstanding capital stock and thereby subject the shares of common stock or total shares of stock to the applicable ownership limit.

Our board of directors may, in its sole discretion, exempt a person from the above-referenced ownership limits. However, the board of directors may not exempt any person whose ownership of our outstanding stock would result in our being "closely held" within the meaning of Section 856(h) of the Code or otherwise would result in our failing to qualify as a REIT. In order to be considered by the board of directors for exemption, a person also must not own, directly or indirectly, an interest in any tenant (or a tenant of any entity which we own or control) that would cause us to own, directly or indirectly, more than a 9.9% interest in the tenant. The person seeking an exemption must represent to the satisfaction of our board of directors that such person will not violate these two restrictions. The person also must agree that any violation or attempted violation of these restrictions will result in the automatic transfer of the shares of stock causing the violation to a trust for the benefit of a charitable beneficiary. As a condition of its waiver, our board of directors may require an opinion of counsel or IRS ruling satisfactory to the board of directors with respect to our qualification as a REIT.

In connection with an exemption from the ownership limits or at any other time, our board of directors may from time to time increase the ownership limits for one or more persons or entities and decrease the ownership limits for all others; provided, however, that any decrease will be effective as to

existing holders who own common stock or total shares of stock, as applicable, in excess of such decreased ownership limit as described below; and provided further that the ownership limit may not be increased if, after giving effect to such increase, five or fewer individuals could own or constructively own in the aggregate, more than 49.9% in value of the shares then outstanding. Prior to the modification of the ownership limit, our board of directors may require such opinions of counsel, affidavits, undertakings or agreements as the board may deem necessary or advisable in order to determine or ensure our qualification as a REIT. A reduced ownership limit will not apply to any person or entity whose percentage ownership in shares of our common stock or total shares of stock, as applicable, is in excess of such decreased ownership limit until such time as such person's or entity's percentage of shares of our common stock or total shares of stock, as applicable, equals or falls below the decreased ownership limit, but any further acquisition of shares of our common stock or total shares of stock, as applicable, in excess of such percentage ownership of shares of our common stock or total shares of stock will be in violation of such ownership limit.

Our charter provisions further prohibit:

- any person from beneficially or constructively owning, applying certain attribution rules of the Code, shares of our stock that would result in our being "closely held" under Section 856(h) of the Code or otherwise cause us to fail to qualify as a REIT; and
- any person from transferring shares of our stock if such transfer would result in shares of our stock being beneficially owned by fewer than 100 persons (determined without reference to any rules of attribution).

Any person who acquires or attempts or intends to acquire beneficial or constructive ownership of shares of our stock that will or may violate any of the foregoing restrictions on transferability and ownership will be required to give written notice of such event to us immediately or, in the case of a proposed or attempted transaction, at least 15 days prior to such proposed or attempted transaction, and provide us with such other information as we may request in order to determine the effect of such transfer on our qualification as a REIT. The foregoing provisions on transferability and ownership will not apply if our board of directors determines that it is no longer in our best interests to attempt to qualify, or to continue to qualify, as a REIT.

Pursuant to our charter, if any transfer of shares of our stock would result in shares of our stock being beneficially owned by fewer than 100 persons, such transfer will be null and void and the intended transferee will acquire no rights in such shares. In addition, if any purported transfer of shares of our stock or any other event would otherwise result in any person violating the ownership limits or such other limit established by our board of directors or in our being "closely held" under Section 856(h) of the Code or otherwise failing to qualify as a REIT, then that number of shares (rounded up to the nearest whole share) that would cause such person to violate such restrictions will be automatically transferred to, and held by, a trust for the exclusive benefit of one or more charitable organizations selected by us and the intended transferee will acquire no rights in such shares. The automatic transfer will be effective as of the close of business on the business day prior to the date of the purported transfer or other event that results in a transfer to the trust. Any dividend or other distribution paid to the purported record transferee, prior to our discovery that the shares had been automatically transferred to a trust as described above, must be repaid to the trustee upon demand for distribution to the charitable beneficiary by the trust. If the transfer to the trust as described above is not automatically effective, for any reason, to prevent violation of the applicable ownership limit or our being "closely held" under Section 856(h) of the Code or otherwise failing to qualify as a REIT, then our charter provides that the transfer of the shares will be null and void and the intended transferee will acquire no rights in such shares.

Shares of stock transferred to the trustee are deemed offered for sale to us, or our designee, at a price per share equal to the lesser of (1) the price paid by the purported record transferee for the

shares (or, if the event that resulted in the transfer to the trust did not involve a purchase of such shares of stock at market price, the last reported sales price reported on the NYSE (or other applicable exchange) on the day of the event which resulted in the transfer of such shares of stock to the trust) and (2) the market price on the date we or our designee accepts such offer. We have the right to accept such offer until the trustee has sold the shares of stock held in the trust pursuant to the clauses discussed below. Upon a sale to us, the interest of the charitable beneficiary in the shares sold terminates, the trustee must distribute the net proceeds of the sale to the purported record transferee and any dividends or other distributions held by the trustee with respect to such shares of stock will be paid to the charitable beneficiary.

If we do not buy the shares, the trustee must, within 20 days of receiving notice from us of the transfer of shares to the trust, sell the shares to a person or entity designated by the trustee who could own the shares without violating the ownership limits or such other limit as established by our board of directors. After that, the trustee must distribute to the purported record transferee an amount equal to the lesser of (1) the price paid by the purported record transferee for the shares (or, if the event which resulted in the transfer to the trust did not involve a purchase of such shares at market price, the last reported sales price reported on the NYSE (or other applicable exchange) on the day of the event which resulted in the transfer of such shares of stock to the trust) and (2) the sales proceeds (net of commissions and other expenses of sale) received by the trust for the shares. Any net sales proceeds in excess of the amount payable to the purported record transferee will be immediately paid to the charitable beneficiary, together with any dividends or other distributions thereon. In addition, if prior to discovery by us that shares of stock have been transferred to a trust, such shares of stock are sold by a purported record transferee, then such shares will be deemed to have been sold on behalf of the trust and to the extent that the purported record transferee received an amount for or in respect of such shares that exceeds the amount that such purported record transferee was entitled to receive, such excess amount must be paid to the trustee upon demand. The purported beneficial transferee or purported record transferee has no rights in the shares held by the trustee.

The trustee will be designated by us and will be unaffiliated with us and with any purported record transferee or purported beneficial transferee. Prior to the sale of any shares by the trust, the trustee will receive, in trust for the beneficiary, all dividends and other distributions paid by us with respect to the shares held in trust and may also exercise all voting rights with respect to the shares held in trust. These rights will be exercised for the exclusive benefit of the charitable beneficiary. Any dividend or other distribution paid prior to our discovery that shares of stock have been transferred to the trust will be paid by the recipient to the trustee upon demand. Any dividend or other distribution authorized but unpaid will be paid when due to the trustee.

Subject to Maryland law, effective as of the date that the shares have been transferred to the trust, the trustee will have the authority, at the trustee's sole discretion:

- to rescind as void any vote cast by a purported record transferee prior to our discovery that the shares have been transferred to the trust; and
- to recast the vote in accordance with the desires of the trustee acting for the benefit of the charitable beneficiary of the trust.

However, if we have already taken irreversible action, then the trustee may not rescind and recast the vote.

If our board of directors determines in good faith that a proposed transfer would violate the restrictions on ownership and transfer of shares of our stock set forth in the charter, the board of directors will take such action as it deems advisable to refuse to give effect to or to prevent such transfer, including, but not limited to, causing us to redeem the shares of stock, refusing to give effect to the transfer on our books or instituting proceedings to enjoin the transfer.

Every owner of more than 5% (or such lower percentage as required by the Code or the regulations promulgated thereunder) of our stock, within 30 days after the end of each taxable year, is required to give us written notice, stating the name and address of such owner, the number of shares of our capital stock which he, she or it beneficially owns and a description of the manner in which the shares are held. Each such owner shall provide us with such additional information as we may request in order to determine the effect, if any, of such beneficial ownership on our status as a REIT and to ensure compliance with the aggregate share ownership limit. In addition, each stockholder shall upon demand be required to provide us with such information as we may request in good faith in order to determine our status as a REIT and to comply with the requirements of any taxing authority or governmental authority or to determine such compliance.

These ownership limits could delay, defer or prevent a transaction or a change in control that might involve a premium price for the common stock or otherwise be in the best interests of the stockholders.

#### **CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF THE MARYLAND GENERAL CORPORATION LAW AND TWO HARBORS' CHARTER AND BYLAWS**

*The following summary description of certain provisions of the MGCL and our charter and bylaws does not purport to be complete and is subject to and qualified in its entirety by reference to the MGCL and the actual provisions of our charter and our bylaws, copies of which are incorporated by reference as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. See "Where You Can Find More Information."*

#### **Our Board of Directors**

Our charter and bylaws provide that the number of directors we have may be established by our board of directors but may not be less than the minimum number required by the MGCL, nor more than 15. Our bylaws currently provide that any vacancy may be filled only by a majority of the remaining directors. Any individual elected to fill such vacancy will serve until the next annual meeting of stockholders and until a successor is duly elected and qualifies.

Pursuant to our bylaws, each of our directors is elected by our common stockholders entitled to vote to serve until the next annual meeting of stockholders and until his or her successor is duly elected and qualified. Holders of shares of common stock will have no right to cumulative voting in the election of directors. Consequently, at each annual meeting of stockholders, the holders of a majority of the shares of common stock entitled to vote will be able to elect all of our directors. However, our Bylaws provide that, in the event that the Company's Secretary determines that, as of the record date for the stockholders' meeting, the number of nominees exceeds the number of directors to be elected, then directors will be elected by a plurality of the votes cast at a meeting of stockholders duly called and at which a quorum is present. In such case, each share may be voted for as many individuals as there are directors to be elected and for whose election the share is entitled to be cast.

#### **Removal of Directors**

Our charter provides that a director may be removed, with or without cause, only by the affirmative vote of the holders of shares entitled to cast at least two-thirds of all the votes of common stockholders entitled to be cast generally in the election of directors. This provision, when coupled with the power of our board of directors to fill vacancies on the board of directors, precludes stockholders from (1) removing incumbent directors except upon a substantial affirmative vote and (2) filling the vacancies created by such removal with their own nominees.

## **Business Combinations**

Under the MGCL, certain "business combinations" (including a merger, consolidation, share exchange or, in certain circumstances, an asset transfer or issuance or reclassification of equity securities) between a Maryland corporation and an interested stockholder (defined generally as any person who beneficially owns, directly or indirectly, 10% or more of the voting power of the corporation's outstanding voting stock or an affiliate or associate of the corporation who, at any time within the two-year period immediately prior to the date in question, was the beneficial owner of 10% or more of the voting power of the then-outstanding stock of the corporation) or an affiliate of such an interested stockholder are prohibited for five years after the most recent date on which the interested stockholder becomes an interested stockholder. Thereafter, any such business combination must be recommended by the board of directors of such corporation and approved by the affirmative vote of at least (a) 80% of the votes entitled to be cast by holders of outstanding voting shares of stock of the corporation and (b) two-thirds of the votes entitled to be cast by holders of voting stock of the corporation other than shares held by the interested stockholder with whom (or with whose affiliate) the business combination is to be effected or held by an affiliate or associate of the interested stockholder, unless, among other conditions, the corporation's common stockholders receive a minimum price (as described in the MGCL) for their shares and the consideration is received in cash or in the same form as previously paid by the interested stockholder for its shares.

These provisions of the MGCL do not apply, however, to business combinations that are approved or exempted by a board of directors prior to the most recent date on which the interested stockholder became an interested stockholder. Our board of directors may provide that the board's approval is subject to compliance with any terms and conditions determined by the board. Pursuant to the statute, our board of directors has by resolution exempted business combinations between us and Pine River or its affiliates. In addition, in the future our board of directors may by resolution exempt business combinations between us and any other person, provided that such resolution is adopted prior to the most recent date on which the applicable interested stockholder becomes an interested stockholder. Consequently, the five-year prohibition and the supermajority vote requirements will not apply to business combinations between us and such persons. As a result, any person described above may be able to enter into business combinations with us that may not be in the best interest of our stockholders without compliance by us with the supermajority vote requirements and other provisions of the statute.

The business combination statute may discourage others from trying to acquire control of us and increase the difficulty of consummating any offer.

## **Control Share Acquisitions**

The MGCL provides that holders of "control shares" of a Maryland corporation acquired in a "control share acquisition" have no voting rights except to the extent approved at a special meeting of stockholders by the affirmative vote of two-thirds of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter, excluding shares of stock in a corporation in respect of which any of the following persons is entitled to exercise or direct the exercise of the voting power of such shares in the election of directors: (1) a person who makes or proposes to make a control share acquisition, (2) an officer of the corporation or (3) an employee of the corporation who is also a director of the corporation. "Control shares" are voting shares of stock which, if aggregated with all other such shares of stock previously acquired by the acquirer, or in respect of which the acquirer is able to exercise or direct the exercise of voting power (except solely by virtue of a revocable proxy), would entitle the acquirer to exercise or direct the exercise of voting power in electing directors within one of the following ranges of voting power: (A) one-tenth or more but less than one-third; (B) one-third or more but less than a majority; or (C) a majority or more of all voting power. Control shares do not include shares that the acquiring person is then entitled to vote as a result of having previously obtained stockholder approval. A "control share

acquisition" means the acquisition of control shares or of the power to direct the exercise of voting power of control shares, subject to certain exceptions.

A person who has made or proposes to make a control share acquisition, upon satisfaction of certain conditions (including an undertaking to pay expenses and making an "acquiring person statement" as described in the MGCL), may compel our board of directors to call a special meeting of stockholders to be held within 50 days of demand to consider the voting rights of the shares. If no request for a meeting is made, the corporation may itself present the question at any stockholders meeting.

If voting rights are not approved at the meeting or if the acquiring person does not deliver an "acquiring person statement" as required by the statute, then, subject to certain conditions and limitations, the corporation may redeem any or all of the control shares (except those for which voting rights have previously been approved) for fair value determined, without regard to the absence of voting rights for the control shares, as of the date of the last control share acquisition by the acquirer or of any meeting of stockholders at which the voting rights of such shares are considered and not approved. If voting rights for control shares are approved at a stockholders meeting and the acquirer becomes entitled to vote a majority of the shares entitled to vote, all other stockholders may exercise appraisal rights. The fair value of the shares as determined for purposes of such appraisal rights may not be less than the highest price per share paid by the acquirer in the control share acquisition.

The control share acquisition statute does not apply to (a) shares acquired in a merger, consolidation or share exchange if the corporation is a party to the transaction or (b) acquisitions approved or exempted by the charter or bylaws of the corporation.

Our bylaws contain a provision exempting from the control share acquisition statute any and all acquisitions by any person of shares of our stock. There is no assurance that such provision will not be amended or eliminated at any time in the future.

#### **Subtitle 8**

Subtitle 8 of Title 3 of the MGCL permits a Maryland corporation with a class of equity securities registered under the Exchange Act and at least three independent directors to elect to be subject, by provision in its charter or bylaws or a resolution of its board of directors and notwithstanding any contrary provision in the charter or bylaws, to any or all of five provisions:

- a classified board;
- a two-thirds vote requirement for removing a director;
- a requirement that the number of directors be fixed only by vote of the directors;
- a requirement that a vacancy on the board be filled only by the remaining directors in office and for the remainder of the full term of the class of directors in which the vacancy occurred; and
- a majority requirement for the calling of a special meeting of stockholders.

Our charter provides that, pursuant to Subtitle 8, vacancies on the board may be filled only by the affirmative vote of a majority of the remaining directors in office, even if the remaining directors do not constitute a quorum, and any director elected to fill a vacancy shall serve for the remainder of the full term of the directorship in which the vacancy occurred. Through provisions in our charter and bylaws unrelated to Subtitle 8, we already (1) require the affirmative vote of the holders of not less than two-thirds of all of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter for the removal of any director from the board, which removal will be allowed with or without cause, (2) vest in the board the exclusive power to fix the number of directorships and (3) require, unless called by the chairman of the board, chief executive officer, president or the board of directors, the written request of stockholders of not less than a majority of all the votes entitled to be cast at such a meeting to call a special meeting.



### **Meetings of Stockholders**

Pursuant to our bylaws, a meeting of our stockholders for the election of directors and the transaction of any business will be held annually on a date and at the time set by our board of directors. In addition, the chairman of the board, chief executive officer, president or board of directors may call a special meeting of our stockholders. Subject to the provisions of our bylaws, a special meeting of our stockholders will also be called by the secretary upon the written request of the stockholders entitled to cast not less than a majority of all the votes entitled to be cast at the meeting.

### **Amendment to Our Charter and Bylaws**

Except for amendments related to removal of directors, the restrictions on ownership and transfer of shares of our stock and the requirement of a two-thirds vote for amendments to these provisions (each of which require the affirmative vote of the holders of not less than two-thirds of all the votes entitled to be cast on the matter and the approval of our board of directors), our charter may be amended only with the approval of the board of directors and the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of all of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter.

Our board of directors has the exclusive power to adopt, alter or repeal any provision of our bylaws and to make new bylaws. In addition, our stockholders may alter or repeal any provision of our bylaws and adopt new bylaws if any such alteration, repeal or adoption is approved by the affirmative vote of a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter.

### **Dissolution of Two Harbors**

Our dissolution must be approved by a majority of the entire board of directors and the affirmative vote of holders of not less than a majority of all of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter.

### **Advance Notice of Director Nominations and New Business**

Our bylaws provide that, with respect to an annual meeting of stockholders, nominations of individuals for election to the board of directors and the proposal of other business to be considered by stockholders may be made only (1) pursuant to our notice of the meeting, (2) by or at the direction of our board of directors or (3) by a stockholder who was a stockholder of record both at the time of giving his notice and at the time of the meeting and who is entitled to vote at the meeting on the election of directors or on the proposal of other business, as the case may be, and has complied with the advance notice provisions set forth in our bylaws.

With respect to special meetings of stockholders, only the business specified in our notice of meeting may be brought before the meeting. Nominations of individuals for election to our board of directors may be made only (1) by or at the direction of our board of directors or (2) provided that the board of directors has determined that directors will be elected at such meeting, by a stockholder who was a stockholder of record both at the time of giving his notice and at the time of the meeting and who is entitled to vote at the meeting and has complied with the advance notice provisions set forth in our bylaws.

### **Anti-takeover Effect of Certain Provisions of Maryland Law and of Our Charter and Bylaws**

Our charter and bylaws and Maryland law contain provisions that may delay, defer or prevent a change in control or other transaction that might involve a premium price for shares of our common stock or otherwise be in the best interests of our stockholders, including business combination provisions, supermajority vote requirements and advance notice requirements for director nominations and stockholder proposals. Likewise, if the provision in the bylaws opting out of the control share

acquisition provisions of the MGCL were rescinded or if we were to opt into the classified board or other provisions of Subtitle 8, these provisions of the MGCL could have similar anti-takeover effects.

#### **Exclusive Forum**

Our bylaws provide that, unless we consent in writing to the selection of an alternative forum, the Circuit Court for Baltimore City, Maryland, or, if that court does not have jurisdiction, the United States District Court for the District of Maryland, Baltimore Division, shall be the sole and exclusive forum for the following: any derivative action or proceeding brought on behalf of Two Harbors; any action asserting a claim of breach of any duty owed by any of our directors or officers or our other employees to us or to our stockholders; any action asserting a claim against us or any of our directors or officers or our other employees arising pursuant to any provision of the MGCL or our charter or bylaws; or any action asserting a claim against us or any of our directors or officers or our employees that is governed by the internal affairs doctrine. This choice of forum provision may limit a stockholder's ability to bring a claim in a judicial forum that the stockholder believes is favorable for disputes with us or our directors, officers or other employees, which may discourage lawsuits against us and our directors, officers and employees. Alternatively, if a court were to find these provisions of our bylaws inapplicable to, or unenforceable in respect of, one or more of the specified types of actions or proceedings, we may incur additional costs associated with resolving such matters in other jurisdictions, which could adversely affect our business, financial condition or results of operations.

#### **Indemnification and Limitation of Directors' and Officers' Liability**

Maryland law permits a Maryland corporation to include in its charter a provision eliminating the liability of its directors and officers to the corporation and its stockholders for money damages except for liability resulting from actual receipt of an improper benefit or profit in money, property or services or active and deliberate dishonesty that is established by a final judgment and is material to the cause of action. Our charter contains such a provision that eliminates such liability to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law.

The MGCL requires us (unless our charter provides otherwise, which our charter does not) to indemnify a director or officer who has been successful, on the merits or otherwise, in the defense of any proceeding to which he or she is made or threatened to be made a party by reason of his or her service in that capacity. The MGCL permits a corporation to indemnify its present and former directors and officers, among others, against judgments, penalties, fines, settlements and reasonable expenses actually incurred by them in connection with any proceeding to which they may be made or threatened to be made a party by reason of their service in those or other capacities unless it is established that:

- the act or omission of the director or officer was material to the matter giving rise to the proceeding and (1) was committed in bad faith or (2) was the result of active and deliberate dishonesty;
- the director or officer actually received an improper personal benefit in money, property or services; or
- in the case of any criminal proceeding, the director or officer had reasonable cause to believe that the act or omission was unlawful.

However, under the MGCL, a Maryland corporation may not indemnify a director or officer in a suit by or in the right of the corporation in which the director or officer was adjudged liable to the corporation or in a proceeding in which the director or officer was adjudged liable on the basis that personal benefit was improperly received. A court may order indemnification if it determines that the director or officer is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnification, even though the director or officer did not meet the prescribed standard of conduct or was adjudged liable on the basis that

personal benefit was improperly received. However, indemnification for an adverse judgment in a suit by us or in our right, or for a judgment of liability on the basis that personal benefit was improperly received, is limited to expenses.

In addition, the MGCL permits a corporation to advance reasonable expenses to a director or officer upon the corporation's receipt of:

- a written affirmation by the director or officer of his or her good faith belief that he or she has met the standard of conduct necessary for indemnification by the corporation; and
- a written undertaking by the director or officer or on the director's or officer's behalf to repay the amount paid or reimbursed by the corporation if it is ultimately determined that the director or officer did not meet the standard of conduct.

Our charter authorizes us to obligate ourselves and our bylaws obligate us, to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law in effect from time to time, to indemnify and, without requiring a preliminary determination of the ultimate entitlement to indemnification, pay or reimburse reasonable expenses in advance of final disposition of a proceeding to:

- any present or former director or officer of ours who is made or threatened to be made a party to the proceeding by reason of his or her service in that capacity; or
- any individual who, while a director or officer of ours and at our request, serves or has served another corporation, REIT, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise as a director, officer, partner or trustee of such corporation, REIT, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise and who is made or threatened to be made a party to the proceeding by reason of his or her service in that capacity.

Our charter and bylaws also permit us to indemnify and advance expenses to any person who served a predecessor of ours in any of the capacities described above and to any employee or agent of ours or a predecessor of ours.

We have entered into indemnification agreements with each of our directors and executive officers that provide for indemnification to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law. In addition, the operating agreements of our subsidiaries provide that we, as managing member, and our officers and directors are indemnified to the fullest extent permitted by law.

Insofar as the foregoing provisions permit indemnification of directors, officers or persons controlling us for liability arising under the Securities Act, we have been informed that, in the opinion of the SEC, this indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is therefore unenforceable.

#### **REIT Qualification**

Our charter provides that our board of directors may revoke or otherwise terminate our REIT election, without approval of our stockholders, if it determines that it is no longer in our best interests to continue to qualify as a REIT.

#### **U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS**

The following is a summary of the material U.S. federal income tax considerations relating to the qualification and taxation of Two Harbors as a REIT and the acquisition, holding and disposition of our common stock. For purposes of this section, references to "Two Harbors," "our," "us" or "we" mean only Two Harbors Investment Corp. and not any of its subsidiaries or other lower-tier entities except as otherwise indicated. This summary is based upon the Code, the regulations promulgated by the U.S. Treasury Department, or the Treasury Regulations, current administrative interpretations and

practices of the IRS (including administrative interpretations and practices expressed in private letter rulings which are binding on the IRS only with respect to the particular taxpayers who requested and received those rulings) and judicial decisions, all as currently in effect and all of which are subject to differing interpretations or to change, possibly with retroactive effect. No assurance can be given that the IRS would not assert, or that a court would not sustain, a position contrary to any of the tax considerations described below. No advance ruling has been or will be sought from the IRS regarding any matter discussed in this summary. The summary is also based upon the assumption that our operation, and the operation of our subsidiaries and other lower-tier and affiliated entities will, in each case, be in accordance with such entity's applicable organizational documents. This summary does not discuss the impact that U.S. state and local taxes and taxes imposed by non-U.S. jurisdictions could have on the matters discussed in this summary. This summary is for general information only, and does not purport to discuss all aspects of U.S. federal income taxation that may be important to a particular stockholder in light of its investment or tax circumstances or to stockholders subject to special tax rules, such as:

- U.S. expatriates;
- persons who mark-to-market our common stock;
- subchapter S corporations;
- U.S. stockholders (as defined below) whose functional currency is not the U.S. dollar;
- financial institutions;
- insurance companies;
- broker-dealers;
- regulated investment companies (or RICs);
- REITs;
- trusts and estates;
- holders who receive our common stock through the exercise of employee stock options or otherwise as compensation;
- persons holding our common stock as part of a "straddle," "hedge," "conversion transaction," "synthetic security" or other integrated investment;
- persons subject to the alternative minimum tax provisions of the Code;
- persons holding their interest in us through a partnership or similar pass-through entity;
- persons holding a 10% or more (by vote or value) beneficial interest in us;
- tax-exempt organizations; and
- non-U.S. stockholders (as defined below, and except as otherwise discussed below).

This summary assumes that holders hold our common stock and warrants as capital assets, which generally means as property held for investment.

THE U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX TREATMENT OF HOLDERS OF OUR COMMON STOCK DEPENDS IN SOME INSTANCES ON DETERMINATIONS OF FACT AND INTERPRETATIONS OF COMPLEX PROVISIONS OF U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX LAW FOR WHICH NO CLEAR PRECEDENT OR AUTHORITY MAY BE AVAILABLE. IN ADDITION, THE U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX TREATMENT OF HOLDING OUR COMMON STOCK TO ANY PARTICULAR STOCKHOLDER WILL DEPEND ON THE STOCKHOLDER'S

PARTICULAR TAX CIRCUMSTANCES. YOU ARE URGED TO CONSULT YOUR TAX ADVISOR REGARDING THE U.S. FEDERAL, STATE, LOCAL, AND FOREIGN INCOME AND OTHER TAX CONSEQUENCES TO YOU, IN LIGHT OF YOUR PARTICULAR INVESTMENT OR TAX CIRCUMSTANCES, OF ACQUIRING, HOLDING, AND DISPOSING OF TWO HARBORS COMMON STOCK.

## **U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations of Two Harbors as a REIT**

### ***Taxation of Two Harbors—General***

We have elected to be taxed as a REIT under Sections 856 through 860 of the Code, commencing with our taxable year ending December 31, 2009. We believe that we have been organized and we intend to operate in a manner that allows us to continue to qualify for taxation as a REIT under the Code.

The law firm of Sidley Austin LLP has acted as our counsel for tax matters in connection with this registration. We have received an opinion of Sidley Austin LLP to the effect that we have been organized and operated in conformity with the requirements for qualification and taxation as a REIT under the Code, and our actual method of operation has enabled, and our proposed method of operation will continue to enable us, to meet the requirements for qualification and taxation as a REIT under the Code. It must be emphasized that the opinion of Sidley Austin LLP is based on various assumptions relating to our organization and operation, including that all factual representations and statements set forth in all relevant documents, records and instruments are true and correct and that we will at all times operate in accordance with the method of operation described in our organizational documents and this document. Additionally, the opinion of Sidley Austin LLP is conditioned upon factual representations and covenants made by our management and the management of PRCM Advisers, regarding our organization, assets, present and future conduct of our business operations and other items regarding our ability to continue to meet the various requirements for qualification as a REIT, and assumes that such representations and covenants are accurate and complete and that we will take no action that could adversely affect our qualification as a REIT. While we believe we are organized and intend to continue to operate so that we will qualify as a REIT, given the highly complex nature of the rules governing REITs, the ongoing importance of factual determinations and the possibility of future changes in our circumstances or applicable law, no assurance can be given by Sidley Austin LLP or us that we will so qualify for any particular year. Sidley Austin LLP will have no obligation to advise us or the holders of our shares of common stock of any subsequent change in the matters stated, represented or assumed or of any subsequent change in the applicable law. You should be aware that opinions of counsel are not binding on the IRS, or any court, and no assurance can be given that the IRS will not challenge the conclusions set forth in such opinions.

Qualification and taxation as a REIT depend on our ability to meet, on a continuing basis, through actual results of operations, distribution levels, diversity of share ownership and various qualification requirements imposed upon REITs by the Code, the compliance with which will not be reviewed by Sidley Austin LLP. In addition, our ability to qualify as a REIT may depend in part upon the operating results, organizational structure and entity classification for U.S. federal income tax purposes of certain entities in which we invest. Our ability to qualify as a REIT also requires that we satisfy certain asset and income tests, some of which depend upon the fair market values of assets directly or indirectly owned by us or which serve as security for loans made by us. Such values may not be susceptible to a precise determination. Accordingly, no assurance can be given that the actual results of our operations for any taxable year will satisfy the requirements for qualification and taxation as a REIT.

### ***Taxation of REITs in General***

As indicated above, qualification and taxation as a REIT depend on our ability to meet, on a continuing basis, through actual results of operations, distribution levels, diversity of share ownership and various qualification requirements imposed upon REITs by the Code. The material qualification requirements are summarized below, under "*Requirements for Qualification as a REIT*." While we believe that we will continue to operate so that we qualify as a REIT, no assurance can be given that the IRS will not challenge our qualification as a REIT or that we will be able to continue to operate in accordance with the REIT requirements in the future. See "*Failure to Qualify*."

Provided that we qualify as a REIT, we will generally be entitled to a deduction for dividends that we pay and, therefore, will not be subject to U.S. federal corporate income tax on our net taxable income that is currently distributed to our stockholders. This treatment substantially eliminates the "double taxation" at the corporate and stockholder levels that results generally from investment in a corporation. Rather, income generated by a REIT generally is taxed only at the stockholder level, upon a distribution of dividends by the REIT. See "*Taxation of Taxable U.S. Stockholders*."

Individuals who are stockholders of corporations that are not REITs are generally taxed on qualifying corporate dividends at a maximum rate of 20%, thereby substantially reducing, though not completely eliminating, the double taxation that has historically applied to corporate dividends. With limited exceptions, however, dividends received by individual U.S. stockholders from us or from other entities that are taxed as REITs are taxed at rates applicable to ordinary income, which will be as high as 37%. However, under the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act, or TCJA, dividends received by individual U.S. shareholders from us that are neither attributable to "qualified dividend income" nor designated as "capital gain dividends" will be eligible for a deduction equal to 20% of the amount of such dividends in taxable years beginning before January 1, 2026. Net operating losses, foreign tax credits and other tax attributes of a REIT generally do not pass through to the stockholders of the REIT, subject to special rules for certain items, such as capital gains, recognized by REITs. See "*Taxation of Taxable U.S. Stockholders*."

Even if we qualify for taxation as a REIT, however, we will be subject to U.S. federal income taxation as follows:

- We will be taxed at regular U.S. federal corporate income tax rates on any undistributed income, including undistributed net capital gains.
- If we have net income from prohibited transactions, which are, in general, sales or other dispositions of property held primarily for sale to customers in the ordinary course of business, other than foreclosure property, such income will be subject to a 100% tax. See "*Prohibited Transactions*" and "*Foreclosure Property*" below.
- If we elect to treat property that we acquire in connection with a foreclosure of a mortgage loan or from certain leasehold terminations as "foreclosure property," we may thereby avoid (a) the 100% tax on gain from a resale of that property (if the sale would otherwise constitute a prohibited transaction) and (b) the inclusion of any income from such property not qualifying for purposes of the REIT gross income tests discussed below, but the income from the sale or operation of the property may be subject to income tax at the corporate tax rate (currently 21%).
- If we fail to satisfy the 75% gross income test or the 95% gross income test, as discussed below, but nonetheless maintain our qualification as a REIT because other requirements are met, we will be subject to a 100% tax on an amount equal to (a) the greater of (1) the amount by which we fail the 75% gross income test or (2) the amount by which we fail the 95% gross income test, as the case may be, multiplied by (b) a fraction intended to reflect our profitability.

- If we fail to satisfy any of the REIT asset tests, as described below, other than a failure of the 5% or 10% REIT asset tests that does not exceed a statutory de minimis amount as described more fully below, but our failure is due to reasonable cause and not due to willful neglect and we nonetheless maintain our REIT qualification because of specified cure provisions, we will be required to pay a tax equal to the greater of \$50,000 or the corporate tax rate (currently 21%) of the net income generated by the non-qualifying assets during the period in which we failed to satisfy the asset tests.
- If we fail to satisfy any provision of the Code that would result in our failure to qualify as a REIT (other than a gross income or asset test requirement) and the violation is due to reasonable cause and not willful neglect, we may retain our REIT qualification but we will be required to pay a penalty of \$50,000 for each such failure.
- If we fail to distribute during each calendar year at least the sum of (a) 85% of our REIT ordinary income for such year, (b) 95% of our REIT capital gain net income for such year and (c) any undistributed taxable income from prior periods (or the required distribution), we will be subject to a 4% excise tax on the excess of the required distribution over the sum of (1) the amounts actually distributed (taking into account excess distributions from prior years), plus (2) retained amounts on which income tax is paid at the corporate level.
- We may be required to pay monetary penalties to the IRS in certain circumstances, including if we fail to meet record-keeping requirements intended to monitor our compliance with rules relating to the composition of our stockholders, as described below in "*Requirements for Qualification as a REIT*."
- A 100% excise tax may be imposed on some items of income and expense that are directly or constructively paid between us and any TRSs we may own if and to the extent that the IRS successfully adjusts the reported amounts of these items.
- If we acquire appreciated assets from a corporation that is not a REIT in a transaction in which the adjusted tax basis of the assets in our hands is determined by reference to the adjusted tax basis of the assets in the hands of the non-REIT corporation, we will be subject to tax on such appreciation at the corporate income tax rate then applicable if we subsequently recognize gain on a disposition of any such assets during the 5-year period following their acquisition from the non-REIT corporation. The results described in this paragraph assume that the non-REIT corporation will not elect, in lieu of this treatment, to be subject to an immediate tax when the asset is acquired by us.
- We will generally be subject to tax on the portion of any excess inclusion income derived from an investment in residual interests in real estate mortgage investment conduits, or REMICs, to the extent our stock is held by specified tax-exempt organizations not subject to tax on unrelated business taxable income. Similar rules will apply if we own an equity interest in a taxable mortgage pool. To the extent that we own a REMIC residual interest or a taxable mortgage pool through a TRS, we will not be subject to this tax.
- We may elect to retain and pay income tax on our net long-term capital gain. In that case, a stockholder would include its proportionate share of our undistributed long-term capital gain (to the extent we make a timely designation of such gain to the stockholder) in its income, would be deemed to have paid the tax that we paid on such gain, and would be allowed a credit for its proportionate share of the tax deemed to have been paid, and an adjustment would be made to increase the stockholder's basis in our common stock. Stockholders that are U.S. corporations will also appropriately adjust their earnings and profits for the retained capital gains in accordance with Treasury Regulations to be promulgated.

- We may have subsidiaries or own interests in other lower-tier entities that are subchapter C corporations, the earnings of which would be subject to U.S. federal corporate income tax.

In addition, we may be subject to a variety of taxes other than U.S. federal income tax, including payroll taxes and state and local income, franchise property and other taxes. We could also be subject to tax in situations and on transactions not presently contemplated.

#### ***Requirements for Qualification as a REIT***

The Code defines a REIT as a corporation, trust or association:

- (1) that is managed by one or more trustees or directors;
- (2) the beneficial ownership of which is evidenced by transferable shares or by transferable certificates of beneficial interest;
- (3) that would be taxable as a domestic corporation but for the special Code provisions applicable to REITs;
- (4) that is neither a financial institution nor an insurance company subject to specific provisions of the Code;
- (5) the beneficial ownership of which is held by 100 or more persons during at least 335 days of a taxable year of 12 months, or during a proportionate part of a taxable year of less than 12 months;
- (6) in which, during the last half of each taxable year, not more than 50% in value of the outstanding stock is owned, directly or indirectly, by five or fewer "individuals" (as defined in the Code to include specified entities);
- (7) which meets other tests described below, including with respect to the nature of its income and assets and the amount of its distributions; and
- (8) that makes an election to be a REIT for the current taxable year or has made such an election for a previous taxable year that has not been terminated or revoked.

The Code provides that conditions (1) through (4) must be met during the entire taxable year, and that condition (5) must be met during at least 335 days of a taxable year of 12 months, or during a proportionate part of a shorter taxable year. Conditions (5) and (6) do not need to be satisfied for the first taxable year for which an election to become a REIT has been made. Our charter provides restrictions regarding the ownership and transfer of our shares, which are intended, among other purposes, to assist in satisfying the share ownership requirements described in conditions (5) and (6) above. For purposes of condition (6), an "individual" generally includes a supplemental unemployment compensation benefit plan, a private foundation or a portion of a trust permanently set aside or used exclusively for charitable purposes, but does not include a qualified pension plan or profit sharing trust.

To monitor compliance with the share ownership requirements, we are generally required to maintain records regarding the actual ownership of our shares. To do so, we must demand written statements each year from the record holders of significant percentages of our shares of stock, in which the record holders are to disclose the actual owners of the shares (i.e., the persons required to include in gross income the dividends paid by us). A list of those persons failing or refusing to comply with this demand must be maintained as part of our records. Failure by us to comply with these record-keeping requirements could subject us to monetary penalties. If we satisfy these requirements and after exercising reasonable diligence would not have known that condition (6) is not satisfied, we will be deemed to have satisfied such condition. A stockholder that fails or refuses to comply with the demand



is required by Treasury Regulations to submit a statement with its tax return disclosing the actual ownership of the shares and other information.

In addition, a corporation generally may not elect to become a REIT unless its taxable year is the calendar year. We satisfy this requirement.

### ***Effect of Subsidiary Entities***

#### *Ownership of Partnership Interests*

In the case of a REIT that is a partner in a partnership, Treasury Regulations provide that the REIT is deemed to own its proportionate share of the partnership's assets and to earn its proportionate share of the partnership's gross income based on its pro rata share of capital interests in the partnership for purposes of the asset and gross income tests applicable to REITs, as described below. However, solely for purposes of the 10% value test, described below, the determination of a REIT's interest in partnership assets will be based on the REIT's proportionate interest in any securities issued by the partnership, excluding for these purposes, certain excluded securities as described in the Code. In addition, the assets and gross income of the partnership generally are deemed to retain the same character in the hands of the REIT. Thus, our proportionate share of the assets and items of income of partnerships in which we own an equity interest is treated as an asset and as an item of income for us for purposes of applying the REIT requirements described below. Consequently, to the extent that we directly or indirectly hold a preferred or other equity interest in a partnership, the partnership's assets and operations may affect our ability to qualify as a REIT, even though we may have no control or only limited influence over the partnership.

#### *Disregarded Subsidiaries*

If a REIT owns a corporate subsidiary that is a "qualified REIT subsidiary," that subsidiary is disregarded for U.S. federal income tax purposes, and all assets, liabilities and items of income, deduction and credit of the subsidiary are treated as assets, liabilities and items of income, deduction and credit of the REIT itself, including for purposes of the gross income and asset tests applicable to REITs, as summarized below. A qualified REIT subsidiary is any corporation, other than a TRS, that is wholly-owned by a REIT, by other disregarded subsidiaries or by a combination of the two. Single member limited liability companies that are wholly-owned by a REIT are also generally disregarded as separate entities for U.S. federal income tax purposes, including for purposes of the REIT gross income and asset tests. Disregarded subsidiaries, along with partnerships in which we hold an equity interest, are sometimes referred to herein as "pass-through subsidiaries."

In the event that a disregarded subsidiary ceases to be wholly-owned by us (for example, if any equity interest in the subsidiary is acquired by a person other than us or another disregarded subsidiary of ours), the subsidiary's separate existence would no longer be disregarded for U.S. federal income tax purposes. Instead, it would have multiple owners and would be treated as either a partnership or a taxable corporation. Such an event could, depending on the circumstances, adversely affect our ability to satisfy the various asset and gross income tests applicable to REITs, including the requirement that REITs generally may not own, directly or indirectly, more than 10% of the value or voting power of the outstanding securities of another corporation. See "*Asset Tests*" and "*Gross Income Tests*."

#### *Taxable REIT Subsidiaries*

A REIT, in general, may jointly elect with a subsidiary corporation, whether or not wholly-owned, to treat the subsidiary corporation as a TRS. The separate existence of a TRS or other taxable corporation, unlike a disregarded subsidiary as discussed above, is not ignored for U.S. federal income tax purposes. Accordingly, such an entity would generally be subject to corporate income tax on its

earnings, which may reduce the cash flow generated by us and our subsidiaries in the aggregate and our ability to make distributions to our stockholders.

We and a number of subsidiaries have jointly elected for each of such subsidiaries to be treated as a TRS. This election allows each such subsidiary to invest in assets and engage in activities that could not be held or conducted directly by us without jeopardizing our qualification as a REIT.

A REIT is not treated as holding the assets of a TRS or other taxable subsidiary corporation or as receiving any income that the subsidiary earns. Rather, the stock issued by the subsidiary is an asset in the hands of the REIT, and the REIT generally recognizes as income the dividends, if any, that it receives from the subsidiary. This treatment can affect the gross income and asset test calculations that apply to the REIT, as described below. Because a parent REIT does not include the assets and income of such subsidiary corporations in determining the parent's compliance with the REIT requirements, such entities may be used by the parent REIT to undertake indirectly activities that the REIT rules might otherwise preclude it from doing directly or through pass-through subsidiaries or render commercially unfeasible (for example, activities that give rise to certain categories of income such as non-qualifying hedging income or inventory sales). If dividends are paid to us by one or more TRSs we may own, then a portion of the dividends that we distribute to stockholders who are taxed at individual rates generally will be eligible for taxation at preferential qualified dividend income tax rates rather than at ordinary income rates. See "*Taxation of Taxable U.S. Stockholders*" and "*Annual Distribution Requirements*."

Certain restrictions imposed on TRSs are intended to ensure that such entities will be subject to appropriate levels of U.S. federal income taxation. First, a TRS may not deduct interest payments made in any year to an affiliated REIT to the extent that such payments exceed, generally, 50% of the TRS's adjusted taxable income for that year (although the TRS may carry forward to, and deduct in, a succeeding year the disallowed interest amount if the 50% test is satisfied in that year). In addition, if amounts are paid to a REIT or deducted by a TRS due to transactions between a REIT, its tenants and/or the TRS, that exceed the amount that would be paid to or deducted by a party in an arm's-length transaction, the REIT generally will be subject to an excise tax equal to 100% of such excess.

### ***Gross Income Tests***

In order to maintain our qualification as a REIT, we must annually satisfy two gross income tests. First, at least 75% of our gross income for each taxable year, excluding gross income from sales of inventory or dealer property in "prohibited transactions" and certain hedging and foreign currency transactions, must be derived from investments relating to real property or mortgages on real property, including "rents from real property," dividends received from and gains from the disposition of shares of other REITs, interest income derived from mortgage loans secured by real property (including certain types of mortgage-backed securities), and gains from the sale of real estate assets (other than a nonqualified publicly offered REIT debt instrument), as well as income from certain kinds of temporary investments. Second, at least 95% of our gross income in each taxable year, excluding gross income from prohibited transactions and certain hedging and foreign currency transactions, must be derived from some combination of income that qualifies under the 75% income test described above, as well as other dividends, interest, and gain from the sale or disposition of stock or securities, which need not have any relation to real property.

For purposes of the 75% and 95% gross income tests, a REIT is deemed to have earned a proportionate share of the income earned by any partnership, or any limited liability company treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes, in which it owns an interest, which share is determined by reference to its capital interest in such entity, and is deemed to have earned the income earned by any qualified REIT subsidiary.

*Interest Income*

Interest income constitutes qualifying mortgage interest for purposes of the 75% gross income test to the extent that the obligation is secured by a mortgage on real property. If we receive interest income with respect to a mortgage loan that is secured by both real property and other property and the highest principal amount of the loan outstanding during a taxable year exceeds the fair market value of the real property on the date that we acquired the mortgage loan, the interest income will be apportioned between the real property and the other property, and our income from the arrangement will qualify for purposes of the 75% gross income test only to the extent that the interest is allocable to the real property. Even if a loan is not secured by real property or is under secured, the income that it generates may nonetheless qualify for purposes of the 95% gross income test. If we acquire or originate a construction loan, for purposes of the foregoing apportionment, the fair market value of the real property includes the fair market value of the land plus the reasonably estimated cost of improvement or developments (other than personal property) which secure the construction loan.

To the extent that the terms of a loan provide for contingent interest that is based on the cash proceeds realized upon the sale of the property securing the loan (or a shared appreciation provision), income attributable to the participation feature will be treated as gain from sale of the underlying property, which generally will be qualifying income for purposes of both the 75% and 95% gross income tests, provided that the property is not inventory or dealer property in the hands of the borrower or us.

To the extent that we derive interest income from a loan where all or a portion of the amount of interest payable is contingent, such income generally will qualify for purposes of the gross income tests only if it is based upon the gross receipts or sales and not the net income or profits of any person. This limitation does not apply, however, to a mortgage loan where the borrower derives substantially all of its income from the property from the leasing of substantially all of its interest in the property to tenants, to the extent that the rental income derived by the borrower would qualify as rents from real property had it been earned directly by us.

Any amount includible in our gross income with respect to a regular or residual interest in a REMIC generally is treated as interest on an obligation secured by a mortgage on real property. If, however, less than 95% of the assets of a REMIC consists of real estate assets (determined as if we held such assets), we will be treated as receiving directly our proportionate share of the income of the REMIC for purposes of determining the amount which is treated as interest on an obligation secured by a mortgage on real property. In addition, some REMIC securitizations include embedded interest rate swap or cap contracts or other derivative instruments that potentially could produce non-qualifying income to us.

We believe that the interest, original issue discount, or OID, and market discount income that we receive from our mortgage-related securities generally will be qualifying income for purposes of both the 75% and 95% gross income tests. However, to the extent that we own non-REMIC collateralized mortgage obligations or other debt instruments secured by mortgage loans (rather than by real property) or secured by non-real estate assets, or debt securities that are not secured by mortgages on real property or interests in real property, the interest income received with respect to such securities generally will be qualifying income for purposes of the 95% gross income test, but not the 75% gross income test. In addition, the loan amount of a mortgage loan that we own may exceed the value of the real property securing the loan. In that case, income from the loan will be qualifying income for purposes of the 95% gross income test, but the interest attributable to the amount of the loan that exceeds the value of the real property securing the loan will not be qualifying income for purposes of the 75% gross income test.

*Dividend Income*

We may receive distributions from TRSs or other corporations that are not REITs or qualified REIT subsidiaries. These distributions are generally classified as dividend income to the extent of the earnings and profits of the distributing corporation. Such distributions generally constitute qualifying income for purposes of the 95% gross income test, but not the 75% gross income test. Any dividends received by us from a REIT will be qualifying income in our hands for purposes of both the 95% and 75% gross income tests.

*TBAs*

We may utilize "to-be-announced", or TBA, forward contracts as a means of investing and financing Agency RMBS. There is no direct authority with respect to the qualifications of income or gains from dispositions of TBAs as gains from the sale of real property (including interests in real property and interests in mortgages on real property) or other qualifying income for purposes of the 75% gross income test. We intend to treat income and gains from our TBAs as qualifying income for purposes of the 75% gross income test, to the extent set forth in an opinion from Sidley Austin LLP substantially to the effect that, for purposes of the 75% gross income test, any gain recognized by us in connection with the settlement of TBAs should be treated as gain from the sale or disposition of the underlying Agency RMBS. Such opinions of counsel are not binding on the IRS, and there can be no assurance that the IRS will not successfully challenge the conclusions set forth therein. In addition, the opinion of Sidley Austin LLP is based on various assumptions relating to our TBAs and is conditioned upon fact-based representations and covenants made by our management regarding our TBAs. If the IRS were to successfully challenge the opinion of Sidley Austin LLP, we could be subject to a penalty tax or we could fail to remain qualified as a REIT if a sufficient portion of our assets consists of TBAs or a sufficient portion of our income consists of income or gains from the disposition of TBAs.

*Hedging Transactions*

We may enter into hedging transactions with respect to one or more of our assets or liabilities. Hedging transactions could take a variety of forms, including interest rate swap agreements, interest rate cap agreements, options, futures contracts, forward rate agreements or similar financial instruments. Except to the extent provided by Treasury Regulations, any income from a hedging transaction we enter into (1) in the normal course of our business primarily to manage risk of interest rate or price changes or currency fluctuations with respect to borrowings made or to be made, or ordinary obligations incurred or to be incurred, to acquire or carry real estate assets, which is clearly identified as specified in Treasury Regulations before the close of the day on which it was acquired, originated, or entered into, including gain from the sale or disposition of such a transaction, or (2) primarily to manage risk of currency fluctuations with respect to any item of income or gain that would be qualifying income under the 75% or 95% income tests which is clearly identified as such before the close of the day on which it was acquired, originated, or entered into, will not constitute gross income for purposes of the 75% or 95% gross income test. In addition, income from certain new hedging transactions that counteract prior qualifying hedging transactions described in (1) and (2) above may not constitute gross income for purposes of the 75% and 95% gross income tests. To the extent that we enter into other types of hedging transactions, the income from those transactions is likely to be treated as non-qualifying income for purposes of both of the 75% and 95% gross income tests. We intend to structure any hedging transactions in a manner that does not jeopardize our qualification as a REIT.

*Failure to Satisfy the Gross Income Tests*

We intend to monitor our sources of income, including any non-qualifying income received by us, so as to ensure our compliance with the gross income tests. If we fail to satisfy one or both of the 75%

or 95% gross income tests for any taxable year, we may still qualify as a REIT for the year if we are entitled to relief under applicable provisions of the Code. These relief provisions will generally be available if our failure to meet these tests was due to reasonable cause and not due to willful neglect and, following the identification of such failure, we set forth a description of each item of our gross income that satisfies the gross income tests in a schedule for the taxable year filed in accordance with the Treasury Regulations. It is not possible to state whether we would be entitled to the benefit of these relief provisions in all circumstances. If these relief provisions are inapplicable to a particular set of circumstances involving us, we will not qualify as a REIT. As discussed above under "*Taxation of REITs in General*," even where these relief provisions apply, a tax would be imposed upon the profit attributable to the amount by which we fail to satisfy the particular gross income test.

### ***Phantom Income***

Due to the nature of the assets in which we will invest, we may be required to recognize taxable income from certain of our assets in advance of our receipt of cash flow on or proceeds from disposition of such assets, and we may be required to report taxable income in early periods that exceeds the economic income ultimately realized on such assets.

We may acquire mortgage-backed securities in the secondary market for less than their face amount. For example, it is likely that we will invest in assets, including mortgage-backed securities, requiring us to accrue original issue discount, or OID, or recognize market discount income, that generate taxable income in excess of economic income or in advance of the corresponding cash flow from the assets referred to as "phantom income." We may also be required under the terms of the indebtedness that we incur to use cash received from interest payments to make principal payment on that indebtedness, with the effect that we will recognize income but will not have a corresponding amount of cash available for distribution to our stockholders.

Due to each of these potential differences between income recognition or expense deduction and related cash receipts or disbursements, there is a significant risk that we may have substantial taxable income in excess of cash available for distribution. In that event, we may need to borrow funds or take other actions to satisfy the REIT distribution requirements for the taxable year in which this "phantom income" is recognized. See "*Annual Distribution Requirements*."

### ***Asset Tests***

We, at the close of each calendar quarter, must also satisfy four tests relating to the nature of our assets. First, at least 75% of the value of our total assets must be represented by some combination of "real estate assets," cash, cash items, U.S. government securities and, under some circumstances, stock or debt instruments purchased with new capital. For this purpose, real estate assets include interests in real property, such as land, buildings, leasehold interests in real property, stock of other corporations that qualify as REITs, debt instruments issued by publicly offered REITs and certain kinds of mortgage-backed securities and mortgage loans. A regular or residual interest in a REMIC is generally treated as a real estate asset. If, however, less than 95% of the assets of a REMIC consists of real estate assets (determined as if we held such assets), we will be treated as owning our proportionate share of the assets of the REMIC. Assets that do not qualify for purposes of the 75% test are subject to the additional asset tests described below. Second, the value of any one issuer's securities owned by us may not exceed 5% of the value of our assets. Third, we may not own more than 10% of any one issuer's outstanding securities, as measured by either voting power or value. Fourth, the aggregate value of all securities of TRSs held by us may not exceed 20% of the value of our gross assets. Five, debt instruments issued by publicly offered REITs, if they would not otherwise qualify as "real estate assets", cannot exceed 25% of the value of our total assets.

The 5% and 10% asset tests do not apply to securities of TRSs and qualified REIT subsidiaries. The 10% value test does not apply to certain "straight debt" and other excluded securities, as described in the Code, including but not limited to any loan to an individual or an estate, any obligation to pay rents from real property and any security issued by a REIT. In addition, (a) a REIT's interest as a partner in a partnership is not considered a security for purposes of applying the 10% value test; (b) any debt instrument issued by a partnership (other than straight debt or other excluded security) will not be considered a security issued by the partnership if at least 75% of the partnership's gross income is derived from sources that would qualify for the 75% REIT gross income test; and (c) any debt instrument issued by a partnership (other than straight debt or other excluded security) will not be considered a security issued by the partnership to the extent of the REIT's interest as a partner in the partnership.

For purposes of the 10% value test, "straight debt" means a written unconditional promise to pay on demand on a specified date a sum certain in money if (i) the debt is not convertible, directly or indirectly, into stock, (ii) the interest rate and interest payment dates are not contingent on profits, the borrower's discretion, or similar factors other than certain contingencies relating to the timing and amount of principal and interest payments, as described in the Code and (iii) in the case of an issuer which is a corporation or a partnership, securities that otherwise would be considered straight debt will not be so considered if we, and any of our "controlled taxable REIT subsidiaries" as defined in the Code, hold any securities of the corporate or partnership issuer which (a) are not straight debt or other excluded securities (prior to the application of this rule), and (b) have an aggregate value greater than 1% of the issuer's outstanding securities (including, for the purposes of a partnership issuer, its interest as a partner in the partnership).

After initially meeting the asset tests at the close of any quarter, we will not lose our qualification as a REIT for failure to satisfy the asset tests at the end of a later quarter solely by reason of changes in asset values. If we fail to satisfy the asset tests because we acquire or increase our ownership interest in securities during a quarter, we can cure this failure by disposing of sufficient non-qualifying assets within 30 days after the close of that quarter. If we fail the 5% asset test, or the 10% vote or value asset tests at the end of any quarter and such failure is not cured within 30 days thereafter, we may dispose of sufficient assets (generally within six months after the last day of the quarter in which our identification of the failure to satisfy these asset tests occurred) to cure such a violation that does not exceed the lesser of 1% of our assets at the end of the relevant quarter or \$10,000,000. If we fail any of the other asset tests or our failure of the 5% and 10% asset tests is in excess of the de minimis amount described above, as long as such failure was due to reasonable cause and not willful neglect, we may be permitted to avoid disqualification as a REIT, after the 30 day cure period, by taking steps including the disposition of sufficient assets to meet the asset test (generally within six months after the last day of the quarter in which our identification of the failure to satisfy the REIT asset test occurred) and paying a tax equal to the greater of \$50,000 or the corporate income tax rate (currently 21%) of the net income generated by the non-qualifying assets during the period in which we failed to satisfy the asset test.

We expect that the assets and mortgage-related securities that we own generally will be qualifying assets for purposes of the 75% asset test. However, to the extent that we own non-REMIC collateralized mortgage obligations or other debt instruments secured by mortgage loans (rather than by real property) or secured by non-real estate assets, or debt securities issued by C corporations that are not secured by mortgages on real property, those securities may not be qualifying assets for purposes of the 75% asset test. In addition, we may utilize TBAs as a means of investing and financing Agency RMBS. There is no direct authority with respect to the qualification of TBAs as real estate assets or U.S. government securities for purposes of the 75% asset test. We intend to treat our TBAs as qualifying assets for purposes of the 75% asset test, to the extent set forth in an opinion from Sidley Austin LLP substantially to the effect that, for purposes of the 75% asset test, our ownership of a TBA

should be treated as ownership of the underlying Agency RMBS. Such opinion of counsel are not binding on the IRS, and there can be no assurance that the IRS will not successfully challenge the conclusions set forth therein. In addition, the opinion of Sidley Austin LLP is based on various assumptions relating to our TBAs and is conditioned upon fact-based representations and covenants made by our management regarding our TBAs. If the IRS were to successfully challenge the opinion of Sidley Austin LLP, we could be subject to a penalty tax or we could fail to remain qualified as a REIT if a sufficient portion of our assets consists of TBAs or a sufficient portion of our income consists of income or gains from the disposition of TBAs.

In addition, we may enter into repurchase agreements under which we will nominally sell certain of our assets to a counterparty and simultaneously enter into an agreement to repurchase the sold assets. We believe that we will be treated for U.S. federal income tax purposes as the owner of the assets that are the subject of any such agreement notwithstanding that we may transfer record ownership of the assets to the counterparty during the term of the agreement. It is possible, however, that the IRS could assert that we did not own the assets during the term of the repurchase agreement, in which case we could fail to qualify as a REIT.

#### ***Annual Distribution Requirements***

In order to qualify as a REIT, we are required to distribute dividends, other than capital gain dividends, to our stockholders in an amount at least equal to:

- (a) the sum of:
  - 90% of our "REIT taxable income" (computed without regard to the deduction for dividends paid and our net capital gains); and
  - 90% of the net income (after tax), if any, from foreclosure property (as described below); minus
- (b) the sum of specified items of non-cash income that exceeds a percentage of our income.

These distributions must be paid in the taxable year to which they relate or in the following taxable year if such distributions are declared in October, November or December of the taxable year, are payable to stockholders of record on a specified date in any such month and are actually paid before the end of January of the following year. Such distributions are treated as both paid by us and received by each stockholder on December 31 of the year in which they are declared. In addition, at our election, a distribution for a taxable year may be declared before we timely file our tax return for the year and be paid with or before the first regular dividend payment after such declaration, provided that such payment is made during the 12-month period following the close of such taxable year. These distributions are taxable to our stockholders in the year in which paid, even though the distributions relate to our prior taxable year for purposes of the 90% distribution requirement.

Except for distributions by "publicly offered REITs", distributions must not be "preferred dividends" in order for such distributions to be counted towards the distribution requirement. A dividend is not a preferential dividend if it is pro rata among all outstanding shares of stock within a particular class and is in accordance with the preferences among different classes of stock as set forth in the organizational documents. We believe that we are and will continue to be a publicly offered REIT and, therefore, will not be subject to this limitation.

To the extent that we distribute at least 90%, but less than 100%, of our "REIT taxable income," as adjusted, we will be subject to tax at ordinary corporate tax rates on the retained portion. In addition, we may elect to retain, rather than distribute, our net long-term capital gains and pay tax on such gains. In this case, we could elect to have our stockholders include their proportionate share of such undistributed long-term capital gains in income and receive a corresponding credit for their

proportionate share of the tax paid by us. Our stockholders would then increase the adjusted basis of their stock in us by the difference between the designated amounts included in their long-term capital gains and the tax deemed paid with respect to their proportionate shares.

If we fail to distribute during each calendar year at least the sum of (a) 85% of our REIT ordinary income for such year, (b) 95% of our REIT capital gain net income for such year and (c) any undistributed taxable income from prior periods, we will be subject to a 4% excise tax on the excess of such required distribution over the sum of (x) the amounts actually distributed (taking into account excess distributions from prior periods) and (y) the amounts of income retained on which we have paid corporate income tax. We intend to make timely distributions so that we are not subject to the 4% excise tax.

It is possible that we, from time to time, may not have sufficient cash to meet the distribution requirements due to timing differences between (a) the actual receipt of cash, including receipt of distributions from our subsidiaries and (b) the inclusion of items in income by us for U.S. federal income tax purposes. For example, we may acquire debt instruments or notes whose face value may exceed its issue price as determined for U.S. federal income tax purposes (such excess, "original issue discount," or OID), such that we will be required to include in our income a portion of the OID each year that the instrument is held before we receive any corresponding cash. In the event that such timing differences occur, in order to meet the distribution requirements, it might be necessary to arrange for short-term, or possibly long-term, borrowings or to pay dividends in the form of taxable in-kind distributions of property, including taxable stock dividends. In the case of a taxable stock dividend, stockholders would be required to include the dividend as income and would be required to satisfy the tax liability associated with the distribution with cash from other sources including sales of our common stock. Both a taxable stock distribution and sale of common stock resulting from such distribution could adversely affect the price of our common stock.

We may be able to rectify a failure to meet the distribution requirements for a year by paying "deficiency dividends" to stockholders in a later year, which may be included in our deduction for dividends paid for the earlier year. In this case, we may be able to avoid losing our qualification as a REIT or being taxed on amounts distributed as deficiency dividends. However, we will be required to pay interest and a penalty based on the amount of any deduction taken for deficiency dividends.

#### ***Recordkeeping Requirements***

We are required to maintain records and request on an annual basis information from specified stockholders. These requirements are designed to assist us in determining the actual ownership of our outstanding stock and maintaining our qualifications as a REIT.

#### ***Prohibited Transactions***

Net income we derive from a prohibited transaction is subject to a 100% tax. The term "prohibited transaction" generally includes a sale or other disposition of property (other than foreclosure property) that is held as inventory or primarily for sale to customers, in the ordinary course of a trade or business by a REIT, by a lower-tier partnership in which the REIT holds an equity interest or by a borrower that has issued a shared appreciation mortgage or similar debt instrument to the REIT. We intend to conduct our operations so that no asset owned by us or our pass-through subsidiaries will be held as inventory or primarily for sale to customers, and that a sale of any assets owned by us directly or through a pass-through subsidiary will not be in the ordinary course of business. However, whether property is held as inventory or "primarily for sale to customers in the ordinary course of a trade or business" depends on the particular facts and circumstances. No assurance can be given that any particular asset in which we hold a direct or indirect interest will not be treated as property held as inventory or primarily for sale to customers or that certain safe harbor provisions of the Code that



prevent such treatment will apply. The 100% tax will not apply to gains from the sale of property that is held through a TRS or other taxable corporation, although such income will be subject to tax in the hands of the corporation at regular corporate income tax rates.

#### ***Foreclosure Property***

Foreclosure property is real property and any personal property incident to such real property (1) that is acquired by a REIT as a result of the REIT having bid on the property at foreclosure or having otherwise reduced the property to ownership or possession by agreement or process of law after there was a default (or default was imminent) on a lease of the property or a mortgage loan held by the REIT and secured by the property, (2) for which the related loan or lease was acquired by the REIT at a time when default was not imminent or anticipated and (3) for which such REIT makes a proper election to treat the property as foreclosure property. REITs generally are subject to tax at the corporate tax rate (currently 21%) on any net income from foreclosure property, including any gain from the disposition of the foreclosure property, other than income that would otherwise be qualifying income for purposes of the 75% gross income test. Any gain from the sale of property for which a foreclosure property election has been made will not be subject to the 100% tax on gains from prohibited transactions described above, even if the property would otherwise constitute inventory or dealer property in the hands of the selling REIT. We do not anticipate that we will receive any income from foreclosure property that is not qualifying income for purposes of the 75% gross income test, but, if we do receive any such income, we intend to elect to treat the related property as foreclosure property.

#### ***Failure to Qualify***

In the event that we violate a provision of the Code that would result in our failure to qualify as a REIT, we may nevertheless continue to qualify as a REIT. Specified relief provisions will be available to us to avoid such disqualification if (1) the violation is due to reasonable cause and not due to willful neglect, (2) we pay a penalty of \$50,000 for each failure to satisfy a requirement for qualification as a REIT and (3) the violation does not include a violation under the gross income or asset tests described above (for which other specified relief provisions are available). This cure provision reduces the instances that could lead to our disqualification as a REIT for violations due to reasonable cause. If we fail to qualify for taxation as a REIT in any taxable year and none of the relief provisions of the Code apply, we will be subject to tax on our taxable income at regular corporate rates. Distributions to our stockholders in any year in which we are not a REIT will not be deductible by us, nor will they be required to be made. In this situation, to the extent of current and accumulated earnings and profits, and, subject to limitations of the Code, distributions to our stockholders will generally be taxable in the case of our stockholders who are individual U.S. stockholders (as defined below), at a maximum rate of 20% and dividends in the hands of our corporate U.S. stockholders may be eligible for the dividends received deduction. In addition, distributions to individual U.S. shareholders during any year in which we are not a REIT will not be eligible for the deduction equal to 20% of the amount of such dividends. Unless we are entitled to relief under specific statutory provisions, we will also be disqualified from re-electing to be taxed as a REIT for the four taxable years following the year during which qualification was lost. It is not possible to state whether, in all circumstances, we will be entitled to statutory relief.

#### ***Taxation of Taxable U.S. Stockholders***

This section summarizes the taxation of U.S. stockholders who hold our stock that are not tax-exempt organizations. For these purposes, a U.S. stockholder is a beneficial owner of our stock or warrants who for U.S. federal income tax purposes is:

- a citizen or resident of the U.S.;

- a corporation (including an entity treated as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes) created or organized in or under the laws of the U.S. or of a political subdivision thereof (including the District of Columbia);
- an estate whose income is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source; or
- any trust if (1) a U.S. court is able to exercise primary supervision over the administration of such trust and one or more U.S. persons have the authority to control all substantial decisions of the trust or (2) it has a valid election in place to be treated as a U.S. person.

If an entity or arrangement treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes holds our stock, the U.S. federal income tax treatment of a partner generally will depend upon the status of the partner and the activities of the partnership. A partner of a partnership holding our common stock should consult its own tax advisor regarding the U.S. federal income tax consequences to the partner of the acquisition, ownership and disposition of our stock by the partnership.

#### *Distributions*

Provided that we qualify as a REIT, distributions made to our taxable U.S. stockholders out of our current or accumulated earnings and profits, and not designated as capital gain dividends, will generally be taken into account by them as ordinary dividend income and will not be eligible for the dividends received deduction for corporations. In determining the extent to which a distribution with respect to our common stock constitutes a dividend for U.S. federal income tax purposes, our earnings and profits will be allocated first to distributions with respect to our preferred stock, if any, and then to our common stock. Dividends received from REITs are generally not eligible to be taxed at the preferential qualified dividend income rates applicable to individual U.S. stockholders who receive dividends from taxable subchapter C corporations.

In addition, distributions from us that are designated as capital gain dividends will be taxed to U.S. stockholders as long-term capital gains, to the extent that they do not exceed our actual net capital gain for the taxable year, without regard to the period for which the U.S. stockholder has held our stock. To the extent that we elect under the applicable provisions of the Code to retain our net capital gains, U.S. stockholders will be treated as having received, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, our undistributed capital gains as well as a corresponding credit for taxes paid by us on such retained capital gains. U.S. stockholders will increase their adjusted tax basis in our common stock by the difference between their allocable share of such retained capital gain and their share of the tax paid by us. Long-term capital gains are generally taxable at maximum federal rates of 20% in the case of U.S. stockholders who are individuals, and 21% for corporations. A U.S. stockholder that is an individual is subject to a 3.8% tax on the lesser of (i) his or her "net investment income" for the relevant taxable year or (ii) the excess of his or her modified gross income for the taxable year over a certain threshold amount depending on the individual's U.S. federal income tax filing status. A similar regime applies to certain estates and trusts. Net investment income generally would include dividends on our common stock and gain from the sale of our common stock.

Distributions in excess of our current and accumulated earnings and profits will not be taxable to a U.S. stockholder to the extent that they do not exceed the adjusted tax basis of the U.S. stockholder's shares in respect of which the distributions were made, but rather will reduce the adjusted tax basis of those shares. To the extent that such distributions exceed the adjusted tax basis of an individual U.S. stockholder's shares, they will be included in income as long-term capital gain, or short-term capital gain if the shares have been held for one year or less. In addition, any dividend declared by us in October, November or December of any year and payable to a U.S. stockholder of record on a specified date in any such month will be treated as both paid by us and received by the U.S. stockholder on December 31 of such year, provided that the dividend is actually paid by us before the end of January of the following calendar year.

With respect to U.S. stockholders who are taxed at the rates applicable to individuals, we may elect to designate a portion of our distributions paid to such U.S. stockholders as "qualified dividend income." A portion of a distribution that is properly designated as qualified dividend income is taxable to non-corporate U.S. stockholders at the same rates as capital gain, provided that the U.S. stockholder has held the common stock with respect to which the distribution is made for more than 60 days during the 121-day period beginning on the date that is 60 days before the date on which such common stock became ex-dividend with respect to the relevant distribution. The maximum amount of our distributions eligible to be designated as qualified dividend income for a taxable year is equal to the sum of:

- (a) the qualified dividend income received by us during such taxable year from non-REIT C corporations (including any TRS in which we may own an interest);
- (b) the excess of any "undistributed" REIT taxable income recognized during the immediately preceding year over the U.S. federal income tax paid by us with respect to such undistributed REIT taxable income; and
- (c) the excess of any income recognized during the immediately preceding year attributable to the sale of a built-in-gain asset that was acquired in a carry-over basis transaction from a non-REIT C corporation over the U.S. federal income tax paid by us with respect to such built-in gain.

In addition, the total amount of dividends that we may designate as "qualified dividend income" or "capital gain dividends" may not exceed our dividends paid for the taxable year. Generally, dividends that we receive will be treated as qualified dividend income for purposes of (a) above if the dividends are received from a domestic C corporation (other than a REIT or a RIC), any TRS we may form, or a "qualifying foreign corporation" and specified holding period requirements and other requirements are met.

Under the TCJA, dividends received by individual U.S. shareholders from us that are neither attributable to "qualified dividend income" nor designated as "capital gain dividends" will be eligible for a deduction equal to 20% of the amount of such dividends in taxable years beginning before January 1, 2026.

To the extent that we have available net operating losses and capital losses carried forward from prior tax years, such losses may, subject to limitations, reduce the amount of distributions that must be made in order to comply with the REIT distribution requirements. See "*Taxation of Two Harbors—General*" and "*Annual Distribution Requirements*." Such losses, however, are not passed through to U.S. stockholders and do not offset income of U.S. stockholders from other sources, nor do they affect the character of any distributions that are actually made by us, which are generally subject to tax in the hands of U.S. stockholders to the extent that we have current or accumulated earnings and profits.

#### *Dispositions of Our Common Stock*

In general, a U.S. stockholder will realize gain or loss upon the sale, redemption or other taxable disposition of our common stock in an amount equal to the difference between the sum of the fair market value of any property and the amount of cash received in such disposition and the U.S. stockholder's adjusted tax basis in the common stock at the time of the disposition. In general, a U.S. stockholder's adjusted tax basis will equal the U.S. stockholder's acquisition cost, increased by the excess of net capital gains deemed distributed to the U.S. stockholder (discussed above) less tax deemed paid on such gain and reduced by returns of capital. In general, capital gains recognized by individuals and other non-corporate U.S. stockholders upon the sale or disposition of shares of our common stock will be subject to a maximum U.S. federal income tax rate of 20%, if our common stock is held for more than one year, and will be taxed at ordinary income rates (of up to 37%) if our common stock is held for one year or less. Gains recognized by U.S. stockholders that are corporations are subject to U.S. federal income tax at a rate of 21%, whether or not classified as long-term capital gains.

Holders are advised to consult with their tax advisors with respect to their capital gain tax liability. Capital losses recognized by a U.S. stockholder upon the disposition of our common stock held for more than one year at the time of disposition will be considered long-term capital losses, and are generally available only to offset capital gain income of the U.S. stockholder but not ordinary income (except in the case of individuals, who may offset up to \$3,000 of ordinary income each year). In addition, any loss upon a sale or exchange of shares of our common stock by a U.S. stockholder who has held the shares for six months or less, after applying holding period rules, will be treated as a long-term capital loss to the extent of distributions received from us that were required to be treated by the U.S. stockholder as long-term capital gain.

*Passive Activity Losses and Investment Interest Limitations*

Distributions made by us and gain arising from the sale or exchange by a U.S. stockholder of our common stock will not be treated as passive activity income. As a result, U.S. stockholders will not be able to apply any "passive losses" against income or gain relating to our common stock. Distributions made by us, to the extent they do not constitute a return of capital, generally will be treated as investment income for purposes of computing the investment interest limitation. A U.S. stockholder that elects to treat capital gain dividends, capital gains from the disposition of stock or qualified dividend income as investment income for purposes of the investment interest limitation will be taxed at ordinary income rates on such amounts.

*Taxation of Tax-Exempt U.S. Stockholders*

U.S. tax-exempt entities, including qualified employee pension and profit sharing trusts and individual retirement accounts, generally are exempt from U.S. federal income taxation. However, they are subject to taxation on their unrelated business taxable income, which is referred to in this prospectus as UBTI. While many investments in real estate may generate UBTI, the IRS has ruled that dividend distributions from a REIT to a tax-exempt entity do not constitute UBTI. Based on that ruling, and provided that (1) a tax-exempt U.S. stockholder has not held our common stock as "debt financed property" within the meaning of the Code (i.e., where the acquisition or holding of the property is financed through a borrowing by the tax-exempt stockholder), (2) our common stock is not otherwise used in an unrelated trade or business, and (3) we do not hold an asset that gives rise to excess inclusion income, distributions from us and income from the sale of our common stock generally should not give rise to UBTI to a tax-exempt U.S. stockholder.

Tax-exempt U.S. stockholders that are social clubs, voluntary employee benefit associations, supplemental unemployment benefit trusts, and qualified group legal services plans exempt from U.S. federal income taxation under Sections 501(c)(7), (c)(9), (c)(17) and (c)(20) of the Code, respectively, are subject to different UBTI rules, which generally will require them to characterize distributions from us as UBTI unless they are able to properly claim a deduction for amounts set aside or placed in reserve for specific purposes so as to offset the income generated by its investment in our common stock. These prospective investors should consult their tax advisors concerning these "set aside" and reserve requirements.

In certain circumstances, a pension trust (1) that is described in Section 401(a) of the Code, (2) is tax exempt under Section 501(a) of the Code, and (3) that owns more than 10% of our stock could be required to treat a percentage of the dividends from us as UBTI if we are a "pension-held REIT." We will not be a pension-held REIT unless (1) either (A) one pension trust owns more than 25% of the value of our stock, or (B) a group of pension trusts, each individually holding more than 10% of the value of our stock, collectively owns more than 50% of such stock; and (2) we would not have qualified as a REIT but for the fact that Section 856(h)(3) of the Code provides that stock owned by such trusts shall be treated, for purposes of the requirement that not more than 50% of the value of the outstanding stock of a REIT is owned, directly or indirectly, by five or fewer "individuals" (as defined

in the Code to include certain entities), as owned by the beneficiaries of such trusts. Certain restrictions limiting ownership and transfer of our stock should generally prevent a tax-exempt entity from owning more than 10% of the value of our stock, or us from becoming a pension-held REIT.

Tax-exempt U.S. stockholders are urged to consult their tax advisors regarding the U.S. federal, state and local tax consequences of owning our stock.

#### ***Taxation of Non-U.S. Stockholders***

The following is a summary of certain U.S. federal income tax consequences of the acquisition, ownership and disposition of our common stock applicable to non-U.S. stockholders of our common stock. For these purposes, a non-U.S. stockholder is a beneficial owner of our stock or warrants who is neither a U.S. stockholder nor an entity that is treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes. The discussion is based on current law and is for general information only. It addresses only selective and not all aspects of U.S. federal income taxation of non-U.S. stockholders. In addition, this discussion assumes that:

- you will not have held more than 10% of our common stock (taking into account applicable constructive ownership rules) at any time during the five-year period ending on the date on which you dispose of our common stock or receive distributions from us;
- our common stock is and will continue to be "regularly traded" on an established securities market located in the United States within the meaning of the Foreign Investment in Real Property Tax Act of 1980, or FIRPTA, although there can be no assurance that this will continue to be the case; and
- you are not a "qualified shareholder", as defined in Section 897(k)(3)(A) of the Code, which describes certain partnerships and other collective investment vehicles that satisfy various recordkeeping, administrative and other requirements.

If you are a non-U.S. stockholder as to which any of these assumptions is not accurate, and in particular if you are a "qualified shareholder" within the meaning of FIRPTA, you should consult your own tax advisor concerning the tax consequence to you of sales of our stock and the receipt of dividends and other distributions from us.

#### ***General***

For most foreign investors, investment in a REIT that invests principally in mortgage loans and mortgage-backed securities is not the most tax-efficient way to invest in such assets. That is because receiving distributions of income derived from such assets in the form of REIT dividends subjects most foreign investors to withholding taxes that direct investment in those asset classes, and the direct receipt of interest and principal payments with respect to them, would not. The principal exceptions are foreign sovereigns and their agencies and instrumentalities, which may be exempt from withholding taxes on certain REIT dividends under the Code, and certain foreign pension funds or similar entities able to claim an exemption from withholding taxes on REIT dividends under the terms of a bilateral tax treaty between their country of residence and the United States.

#### ***Ordinary Dividends***

The portion of dividends received by non-U.S. stockholders payable out of our earnings and profits that are not effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business of the non-U.S. stockholder will generally be subject to U.S. federal withholding tax at the rate of 30%, unless reduced or eliminated by an applicable income tax treaty. Under some treaties, however, lower rates generally applicable to dividends do not apply to dividends from REITs. In addition, any portion of the dividends paid to non-U.S. stockholders that are treated as excess inclusion income will not be eligible for exemption

from the 30% withholding tax or a reduced treaty rate. In the case of a taxable stock dividend with respect to which any withholding tax is imposed, we may have to withhold or dispose of part of the shares otherwise distributable in such dividend and use such shares or the proceeds of such disposition to satisfy the withholding tax imposed.

In general, non-U.S. stockholders will not be considered to be engaged in a U.S. trade or business solely as a result of their ownership of our stock. In cases where the dividend income from a non-U.S. stockholder's investment in our common stock is, or is treated as, effectively connected with the non-U.S. stockholder's conduct of a U.S. trade or business, the non-U.S. stockholder generally will be subject to U.S. federal income tax at graduated rates, in the same manner as U.S. stockholders are taxed with respect to such dividends, and may also be subject to the 30% branch profits tax on the income after the application of the income tax in the case of a non-U.S. stockholder that is a corporation.

#### *Other U.S. Federal Income Tax Withholding and Reporting Requirements*

The FATCA provisions of the Code currently impose a 30% withholding tax on U.S.-source dividends, interest and other income items and will impose such tax on proceeds from the sale, redemption or other disposition of property producing U.S.-source dividends and interest paid after December 31, 2018, to (i) foreign financial institutions that do not agree to comply with certain diligence, reporting and withholding obligations with respect to their U.S. accounts and (ii) non-financial foreign entities that do not identify (or confirm the absence of) substantial U.S. owners. The withholding tax of 30% would apply to dividends and the gross proceeds of a disposition of our common stock paid to certain foreign entities unless various information reporting requirements are satisfied. For these purposes, a foreign financial institution generally is defined as any non-U.S. entity that (i) accepts deposits in the ordinary course of a banking or similar business, (ii) is engaged in the business of holding financial assets for the account of others, or (iii) is engaged or holds itself out as being engaged primarily in the business of investing, reinvesting, or trading in securities, partnership interests, commodities, or any interest in such assets.

#### *Non-Dividend Distributions*

Unless either (i) the non-U.S. stockholder's investment in our common stock is effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business conducted by such non-U.S. stockholder (in which case the non-U.S. stockholder will be subject to the same treatment as U.S. stockholders with respect to such gain) or (ii) the non-U.S. stockholder is a nonresident alien individual who was present in the U.S. for 183 days or more during the taxable year and has a "tax home" in the U.S. (in which case the non-U.S. stockholder will be subject to a 30% tax on the individual's net capital gain for the year), distributions by us which are not dividends out of our earnings and profits will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax. If we cannot determine at the time at which a distribution is made whether or not the distribution will exceed current and accumulated earnings and profits, the distribution will be subject to withholding at the rate applicable to dividends. However, the non-U.S. stockholder may seek a refund from the IRS of any amounts withheld if it is subsequently determined that the distribution was, in fact, in excess of our current and accumulated earnings and profits

#### *Capital Gain Dividends*

Capital gain dividends received by a non-U.S. stockholder from a REIT, to the extent not attributable to U.S. real property interests, are generally not subject to U.S. federal income or withholding tax, unless either (i) the non-U.S. stockholder's investment in our common stock is effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business conducted by such non-U.S. stockholder (in which case the non-U.S. stockholder will be subject to the same treatment as U.S. stockholders with respect to such gain) or (ii) the non-U.S. stockholder is a nonresident alien individual who was present in the

U.S. for 183 days or more during the taxable year and has a "tax home" in the U.S. (in which case the non-U.S. stockholder will be subject to a 30% tax on the individual's net capital gain for the year).

*Dispositions of Our Common Stock*

Gain from the sale of our common stock will be taxable in the U.S. to a non-U.S. stockholder in two cases: (i) if the non-U.S. stockholder's investment in our common stock is effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business conducted by such non-U.S. stockholder, the non-U.S. stockholder will be subject to the same treatment as a U.S. stockholder with respect to such gain, or (ii) if the non-U.S. stockholder is a nonresident alien individual who was present in the U.S. for 183 days or more during the taxable year and has a "tax home" in the U.S., the nonresident alien individual will be subject to a 30% tax on the individual's capital gain.

***Backup Withholding and Information Reporting***

We will report to our U.S. stockholders and the IRS the amount of dividends paid during each calendar year and the amount of any tax withheld. Under the backup withholding rules, a U.S. stockholder may be subject to backup withholding with respect to dividends paid unless the holder is a corporation or comes within other exempt categories and, when required, demonstrates this fact or provides a taxpayer identification number or social security number, certifies as to no loss of exemption from backup withholding and otherwise complies with applicable requirements of the backup withholding rules. A U.S. stockholder that does not provide his or her correct taxpayer identification number or social security number may also be subject to penalties imposed by the IRS. In addition, we may be required to withhold a portion of capital gain distributions to any U.S. stockholder who fails to certify its non-foreign status.

We must report annually to the IRS and to each non-U.S. stockholder the amount of dividends paid to such holder and the tax withheld with respect to such dividends, regardless of whether withholding was required. Copies of the information returns reporting such dividends and withholding may also be made available to the tax authorities in the country in which the non-U.S. stockholder resides under the provisions of an applicable income tax treaty. A non-U.S. stockholder may be subject to backup withholding unless applicable certification requirements are met.

Payment of the proceeds of a sale of our common stock within the U.S. is subject to both backup withholding and information reporting unless the beneficial owner certifies under penalties of perjury that it is a non-U.S. stockholder (and the payor does not have actual knowledge or reason to know that the beneficial owner is a U.S. person) or the holder otherwise establishes an exemption. Payment of the proceeds of a sale of our common stock conducted through certain U.S. related financial intermediaries is subject to information reporting (but not backup withholding) unless the financial intermediary has documentary evidence in its records that the beneficial owner is a non-U.S. stockholder and specified conditions are met or an exemption is otherwise established.

Backup withholding is not an additional tax. Any amounts withheld under the backup withholding rules may be allowed as a refund or a credit against such holder's U.S. federal income tax liability provided the required information is furnished to the IRS.

***State, Local and Foreign Taxes***

We and our stockholders may be subject to state, local or foreign taxation in various jurisdictions, including those in which we or they transact business, own property or reside. The state, local or foreign tax treatment of us and our stockholders may not conform to the U.S. federal income tax treatment discussed above. Prospective stockholders should consult their tax advisors regarding the application and effect of state, local and foreign income and other tax laws on an investment in our common stock.

***Legislative or other actions affecting REITs could materially and adversely affect us and our stockholders.***

The rules dealing with U.S. federal income taxation are constantly under review by persons involved in the legislative process and by the IRS and the U.S. Department of the Treasury. Changes to the tax laws, with or without retroactive application, could materially and adversely affect us and our stockholders. We cannot predict how changes in the tax laws might affect us or our stockholders. New legislation, U.S. Treasury regulations, administrative interpretations or court decisions could significantly and negatively affect our ability to qualify as a REIT or the U.S. federal income tax consequences of such qualification.

In addition, the recently enacted TCJA makes substantial changes to the Code. Among those changes are a significant permanent reduction in the generally applicable corporate tax rate, changes in the taxation of individuals and other non-corporate taxpayers that generally but not universally reduce their taxes on a temporary basis subject to "sunset" provisions, the elimination or modification of various currently allowed deductions (including additional limitations on the deductibility of business interest and substantial limitation on the deduction for state and local taxes imposed on individuals), and preferential taxation of income (including REIT dividends) derived by non-corporate taxpayers from "pass-through" entities. The TCJA also imposes certain additional limitations on the deduction of net operating losses, which may in the future cause us to make distributions that will be taxable to our stockholders to the extent of our current or accumulated earnings and profits in order to comply with the annual REIT distribution requirements. Finally, the TCJA also makes significant changes in the international tax rules, which among other things may require us to include in our taxable income, and to distribute, pre-2018 earnings of certain of our foreign subsidiaries, which earnings have previously been deferred from taxation in the United States. The effect of these, and the many other, changes made in the TCJA is highly uncertain, both in terms of their direct effect on the taxation of an investment in our common stock and their indirect effect on the value of our assets. Furthermore, many of the provisions of the TCJA will require guidance through the issuance of U.S. Treasury regulations in order to assess their effect. There may be a substantial delay before such regulations are promulgated, increasing the uncertainty as to the ultimate effect of the statutory amendments on us. It is also likely that there will be technical corrections legislation proposed with respect to the TCJA, the timing and effect of which cannot be predicted and may be adverse to us or our stockholders.



## SELLING SECURITYHOLDERS

Selling securityholders are persons or entities that, directly or indirectly, have acquired or will from time to time acquire from us common stock, preferred stock, depository shares or debt securities, as applicable, in various private transactions. Such selling securityholders may be parties to registration rights agreements with us, or we otherwise may have agreed or will agree to register their securities for resale. The initial purchasers of our securities, as well as their transferees, pledgees, donees or successors, all of whom we refer to as "selling securityholders," may from time to time offer and sell the securities pursuant to this prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement.

Unless otherwise set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will not receive any proceeds from the sale of the securities by the selling securityholders, but in certain cases we may pay fees and expenses relating to the registration or an offering of such securities, such as registration and filing fees, fees and expenses for complying with federal and state securities laws and NYSE rules and regulations, and fees and expenses incurred in connection with a listing, if any, of any of the securities on any securities exchange or association.

The selling securityholders may offer for sale all or some portion of the securities that they hold. To the extent that any of the selling securityholders are brokers or dealers, they are deemed to be, under interpretations of the SEC, "underwriters" within the meaning of the Securities Act.

The applicable prospectus supplement will set forth the name of each of the selling securityholders, the number and classes of our securities beneficially owned by such selling securityholders that are covered by such prospectus supplement, the amount to be offered for the selling securityholder's account, and the amount and (if one percent or more) the percentage of the class to be owned by such selling securityholder after completion of the offering. The applicable prospectus supplement will also disclose whether any of the selling securityholders has held any position or office with, has been employed by or otherwise has had a material relationship with us during the three years prior to the date of the prospectus supplement.

## PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

We and any selling securityholders may sell the securities offered by this prospectus from time to time in one or more transactions, including without limitation:

- to or through underwriters or dealers;
- directly to purchasers;
- in "at the market" offerings, within the meaning of Rule 415(a)(4) of the Securities Act to or through a market maker or into an existing trading market on an exchange or otherwise;
- to purchasers through agents;
- in block trades;
- through a combination of these methods; or
- through any other method permitted by applicable law and described in a prospectus supplement.

In addition, we may issue the securities offered by this prospectus as a dividend or distribution to our existing stockholders or other securityholders.

The prospectus supplement with respect to any offering of securities will include the following information:

- the terms of the offering;
- the names of any underwriters or agents;
- the name or names of any managing underwriter or underwriters;
- the public offering price or purchase price of the securities and the net proceeds to be received by us or the selling securityholders from the sale;
- any delayed delivery arrangements;
- any underwriting discounts or commissions or agency fees and other items constituting underwriters' or agents' compensation;
- any discounts or concessions allowed or reallocated or paid to dealers; and
- any securities exchange on which the securities may be listed.

### **Sale through Underwriters or Dealers**

If underwriters are used in the sale, the underwriters may resell the securities from time to time in one or more transactions, including negotiated transactions, at a fixed public offering price or at varying prices determined at the time of sale. Underwriters may offer securities to the public either through underwriting syndicates represented by one or more managing underwriters or directly by one or more firms acting as underwriters. Unless we inform you otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, the obligations of the underwriters to purchase the securities will be subject to certain conditions, and the underwriters will be obligated to purchase all of the offered securities if they purchase any of them. The underwriters may change from time to time any initial public offering price and any discounts or concessions allowed or reallocated or paid to dealers.

We will describe the name or names of any underwriters, dealers or agents and the purchase price of the securities in a prospectus supplement relating to the securities.

In connection with the sale of the securities, underwriters may receive compensation from us or from purchasers of the securities, for whom they may act as agents, in the form of discounts, concessions or commissions. Underwriters may sell the securities to or through dealers, and these dealers may receive compensation in the form of discounts, concessions or commissions from the underwriters and/or commissions from the purchasers for whom they may act as agents, which is not expected to exceed that customary in the types of transactions involved. Underwriters, dealers and agents that participate in the distribution of the securities may be deemed to be underwriters, and any discounts or commissions they receive from us, and any profit on the resale of the securities they realize may be deemed to be underwriting discounts and commissions, under the Securities Act. The prospectus supplement will identify any underwriter or agent and will describe any compensation they receive from us.

Underwriters could make sales in privately negotiated transactions and/or any other method permitted by law, including sales deemed to be an "at-the-market" offering, sales made directly on the NYSE, the existing trading market for our shares of common stock, or sales made to or through a market maker other than on an exchange. The name of any such underwriter or agent involved in the offer and sale of our shares of common stock, the amounts underwritten, and the nature of its obligations to take our shares of common stock will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Unless otherwise specified in the prospectus supplement, each series of the securities will be a new issue with no established trading market, other than our shares of common stock, which are currently listed on the NYSE. We currently intend to list any shares of common stock sold pursuant to this prospectus on the NYSE. We may elect to list any series of shares of preferred stock on an exchange, but are not obligated to do so. It is possible that one or more underwriters may make a market in a series of the securities, but underwriters will not be obligated to do so and may discontinue any market making at any time without notice. Therefore, we can give no assurance about the liquidity of the trading market for any of the securities.

Under agreements we may enter into, we may indemnify underwriters, dealers, and agents who participate in the distribution of the securities against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or contribute with respect to payments that the underwriters, dealers or agents may be required to make.

To facilitate the offering of securities, certain persons participating in the offering may engage in transactions that stabilize, maintain, or otherwise affect the price of the securities. This may include over-allotments or short sales of the securities, which involve the sale by persons participating in the offering of more securities than we sold to them. In these circumstances, these persons would cover such over-allotments or short positions by making purchases in the open market or by exercising their over-allotment option, if any. In addition, these persons may stabilize or maintain the price of the securities by bidding for or purchasing securities in the open market or by imposing penalty bids, whereby selling concessions allowed to dealers participating in the offering may be reclaimed if securities sold by them are repurchased in connection with stabilization transactions. The effect of these transactions may be to stabilize or maintain the market price of the securities at a level above that which might otherwise prevail in the open market. These transactions may be discontinued at any time. From time to time, we may engage in transactions with these underwriters, dealers, and agents in the ordinary course of business.

If indicated in the prospectus supplement, we may authorize underwriters or other persons acting as our agents to solicit offers by institutions to purchase securities from us pursuant to contracts providing for payment and delivery on a future date. Institutions with which we may make these delayed delivery contracts include commercial and savings banks, insurance companies, pension funds, investment companies, educational and charitable institutions and others. The obligations of any

purchaser under any such delayed delivery contract will be subject to the condition that the purchase of the securities shall not at the time of delivery be prohibited under the laws of the jurisdiction to which the purchaser is subject. The underwriters and other agents will not have any responsibility with regard to the validity or performance of these delayed delivery contracts.

#### **Direct Sales and Sales through Agents**

We may sell the securities directly. In this case, no underwriters or agents would be involved. We may also sell the securities through agents designated by us from time to time. In the applicable prospectus supplement, we will name any agent involved in the offer or sale of the offered securities, and we will describe any commissions payable to the agent. Unless we inform you otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, any agent will agree to use its reasonable best efforts to solicit purchases for the period of its appointment.

We may sell the securities directly to institutional investors or others who may be deemed to be underwriters within the meaning of the Securities Act with respect to any sale of those securities. We will describe the terms of any sales of these securities in the applicable prospectus supplement.

#### **Remarketing Arrangements**

Securities may also be offered and sold, if so indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, in connection with a remarketing upon their purchase, in accordance with a redemption or repayment pursuant to their terms, or otherwise, by one or more remarketing firms, acting as principals for their own accounts or as agents for us. Any remarketing firm will be identified and the terms of its agreements, if any, with us and its compensation will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

#### **General**

We may have agreements with the underwriters, dealers, agents and remarketing firms to indemnify them against certain civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or to contribute with respect to payments that the underwriters, dealers, agents or remarketing firms may be required to make. Underwriters, dealers, agents and remarketing firms may be customers of, engage in transactions with or perform services for us in the ordinary course of their businesses.

## LEGAL MATTERS

Certain legal matters in connection with this prospectus will be passed upon for us by Stinson Leonard Street LLP, Minneapolis, Minnesota, including the validity of the offered securities. Certain legal matters in connection with this prospectus will also be passed upon for us by Sidley Austin LLP, including the qualification of our company as a REIT for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

## EXPERTS

Ernst & Young LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, has audited our consolidated financial statements and schedules included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017, and the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017, as set forth in their reports, which are incorporated by reference in this prospectus and elsewhere in the registration statement. Our financial statements and schedules are incorporated by reference in reliance on Ernst & Young LLP's reports, given on their authority as experts in accounting and auditing.

## WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

We file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. These filings are available for inspection and copying at the public reference room of the SEC, 100 F Street, N.E., Room 1580, Washington, D.C. 20549. Information about the operation of the public reference room may be obtained by calling the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330. Our SEC filings, including the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, are also available to you on the SEC's website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov). We also maintain a website on the Internet with the address of [www.twoharborsinvestment.com](http://www.twoharborsinvestment.com) where you can find additional information. All internet addresses provided in this prospectus or any prospectus supplement are for information purposes only and are not intended to be hyperlinks. We are not incorporating by reference into this prospectus or any prospectus supplement the information on our website or any other website, and you should not consider our website or any other website to be a part of this prospectus, any prospectus supplement or other offering materials.

## INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN DOCUMENTS BY REFERENCE

The SEC's rules allow us to "incorporate by reference" information into this prospectus, which means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to another document filed separately with the SEC. The information incorporated by reference is deemed to be part of this prospectus from the date of filing those documents. Any reports filed by us with the SEC on or after the date of this prospectus will automatically update and, where applicable, supersede any information contained in this prospectus or incorporated by reference in this prospectus. We have filed the documents listed below with the SEC under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or the Exchange Act, and these documents are incorporated herein by reference (other than information in such documents that is furnished and not deemed to be filed):

- Our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017, filed with the SEC on February 27, 2018;
- The information specifically incorporated by reference into our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016 from our Definitive Proxy Statement on Schedule 14A filed with the SEC on March 30, 2017;
- The description of our common stock included in our Registration Statement on Form 8-A filed on February 10, 2011, as amended by the Form 8-A/A filed on November 2, 2017;

[Table of Contents](#)

- The description of our Series A Preferred Stock included in our Registration Statement on Form 8-A filed on March 13, 2017;
- The description of our Series B Preferred Stock included in our Registration Statement on Form 8-A filed on July 17, 2017; and
- The description of our Series C Preferred Stock included in our Registration Statement on Form 8-A filed on November 22, 2017.

All documents we file (but not furnish) pursuant to Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act on or after the date of this prospectus and prior to the termination of the offering of the securities to which this prospectus relates (other than information in such documents that is furnished and not deemed to be filed) shall be deemed to be incorporated by reference into this prospectus and to be a part hereof from the date of filing of those documents.

We will provide to each person, including any beneficial owner, to whom a copy of this prospectus is delivered, a copy of any or all of the information that has been incorporated by reference in this prospectus but not delivered with this prospectus (other than the exhibits to such documents which are not specifically incorporated by reference therein); we will provide this information at no cost to the requester upon written or oral request to: Secretary, Two Harbors Investment Corp., 575 Lexington Avenue, Suite 2930, New York, New York 10022, or (612) 629-2500.

**PART II**  
**INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS**

**Item 14. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution.**

The following table shows the fees and expenses to be paid by Two Harbors Investment Corp. in connection with the sale and distribution of the securities being registered hereby.

	<u>Amount to be paid</u>
Registration Fee under the Securities Act of 1933	*
Accounting fees and expenses	\$ **
Legal fees and expenses (including Blue Sky fees)	**
Transfer agent fees and expenses	**
Printing expenses	**
Miscellaneous expenses	**
Total	<u>\$ **</u>

\* Deferred in accordance with Rules 456(b) and 457(r) under the Securities Act of 1933.

\*\* These fees are calculated based on the number of issuances and the amount of securities offered and, accordingly, cannot be estimated or calculated at this time.

**Item 15. Indemnification of Directors and Officers.**

Maryland law permits a Maryland corporation to include in its charter a provision eliminating the liability of its directors and officers to the corporation and its stockholders for money damages, except for liability resulting from (1) actual receipt of an improper benefit or profit in money, property or services or (2) active and deliberate dishonesty established by a final judgment as being material to the cause of action. Our charter contains such a provision that eliminates such liability to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law.

The Maryland General Corporations Law, or MGCL, requires us (unless our charter provides otherwise, which our charter does not) to indemnify a director or officer who has been successful, on the merits or otherwise, in the defense of any proceeding to which he or she is made or threatened to be made a party by reason of his or her service in that capacity. The MGCL permits a corporation to indemnify its present and former directors and officers, among others, against judgments, penalties, fines, settlements and reasonable expenses actually incurred by them in connection with any proceeding to which they may be made or threatened to be made a party by reason of their service in those or other capacities unless it is established that:

- the act or omission of the director or officer was material to the matter giving rise to the proceeding and (1) was committed in bad faith or (2) was the result of active and deliberate dishonesty;
- the director or officer actually received an improper personal benefit in money, property or services; or
- in the case of any criminal proceeding, the director or officer had reasonable cause to believe that the act or omission was unlawful.

However, under the MGCL, a Maryland corporation may not indemnify a director or officer in a suit by or in the right of the corporation in which the director or officer was adjudged liable to the corporation or in a proceeding in which the director or officer was adjudged liable on the basis that personal benefit was improperly received. A court may order indemnification if it determines that the

director or officer is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnification, even though the director or officer did not meet the prescribed standard of conduct or was adjudged liable on the basis that personal benefit was improperly received. However, indemnification for an adverse judgment in a suit by us or in our right, or for a judgment of liability on the basis that personal benefit was improperly received, is limited to expenses.

In addition, the MGCL permits a corporation to advance reasonable expenses to a director or officer upon the corporation's receipt of:

- a written affirmation by the director or officer of his or her good faith belief that he or she has met the standard of conduct necessary for indemnification by the corporation; and
- a written undertaking by the director or officer or on the director's or officer's behalf to repay the amount paid or reimbursed by the corporation if it is ultimately determined that the director or officer did not meet the standard of conduct.

Our charter authorizes us to obligate ourselves and our bylaws obligate us, to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law in effect from time to time, to indemnify and, without requiring a preliminary determination of the ultimate entitlement to indemnification, pay or reimburse reasonable expenses in advance of final disposition of a proceeding to:

- any present or former director or officer who is made or threatened to be made a party to the proceeding by reason of his or her service in that capacity; or
- any individual who, while a director or officer of our company and at our request, serves or has served another corporation, real estate investment trust, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise as a director, officer, partner or trustee of such corporation, real estate investment trust, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise and who is made or threatened to be made a party to the proceeding by reason of his or her service in that capacity.

Our charter and bylaws also permit us to indemnify and advance expenses to any person who served a predecessor of ours in any of the capacities described above and to any employee or agent of ours or a predecessor of ours.

We have entered into indemnification agreements with each of our directors and executive officers that provide for indemnification to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law. In addition, the operating agreement of Two Harbors Operating Company LLC provides that we, as managing member, and our officers and directors are indemnified to the fullest extent permitted by law.

Insofar as the foregoing provisions permit indemnification of directors, officers or persons controlling us for liability arising under the Securities Act, we have been informed that, in the opinion of the SEC, this indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is therefore unenforceable.

**Item 16. Exhibits.**

See the Exhibits Index, which is incorporated into this registration statement by reference.

**Item 17. Undertakings.**

(a) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes:

(1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:

(i) To include any prospectus required by section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933;



- (ii) To reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than 20% change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement; and
- (iii) To include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement;

*provided, however*, that paragraphs (a)(1)(i), (a)(1)(ii) and (a)(1)(iii) of this section do not apply if the information required to be included in a post-effective amendment by those paragraphs is contained in reports filed with or furnished to the Commission by the Registrant pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 that are incorporated by reference in the registration statement, or is contained in a form of prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) that is part of the registration statement.

- (2) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
- (3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.
- (4) That, for purposes of determining liability under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser:
  - (i) Each prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to rule 424(b)(3) shall be deemed to be part of the registration statement as of the date the filed prospectus was deemed part of and included in the registration statement; and
  - (ii) Each prospectus required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424(b)(2), (b)(5), or (b)(7) as part of a registration statement in reliance on Rule 430B relating to an offering made pursuant to Rule 415(a)(1)(i), (vii), or (x) for the purpose of providing the information required by section 10(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the earlier of the date such form of prospectus is first used after effectiveness or the date of the first contract of sale of securities in the offering described in the prospectus. As provided in Rule 430B, for liability purposes of the issuer and any person that is at that date an underwriter, such date shall be deemed to be a new effective date of the registration statement relating to the securities in the registration statement to which that prospectus relates, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof. Provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such effective date, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the

registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such effective date.

- (5) That, for the purpose of determining liability of the registrant under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities, the undersigned registrant undertakes that in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:
- (i) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;
  - (ii) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant or used or referred to by the undersigned registrant;
  - (iii) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant; and
  - (iv) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned registrant to the purchaser.
- (b) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes that, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each filing of the registrant's annual report pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (and, where applicable, each filing of an employee benefit plan's annual report pursuant to Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) that is incorporated by reference in the registration statement shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
- (c) The undersigned registrant hereby further undertakes that:
- (1) For purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933 the information omitted from the form of prospectus filed as part of this registration statement in reliance upon Rule 430A and contained in a form of prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(1) or (4), or 497(h) under the Securities Act shall be deemed to be part of this registration statement as of the time it was declared effective.
  - (2) For the purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act, each post-effective amendment that contains a form of prospectus shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
- (d) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers or controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. If a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

**EXHIBIT INDEX**

<b>Exhibit Number</b>	<b>Exhibit Description</b>
1.1	Form of Underwriting Agreement.*
2.1	<a href="#">Agreement and Plan of Merger, dated as of June 11, 2009, by and among Capitol Acquisition Corp., Two Harbors Investment Corp., Two Harbors Merger Corp. and Pine River Capital Management L.P. (incorporated by reference to Annex A filed with Pre Effective Amendment No. 4 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-4 (File No. 333-160199) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC, on October 8, 2009 ("Amendment No. 4"))</a> .
2.2	<a href="#">Amendment No. 1 to Agreement and Plan of Merger, dated as of August 17, 2009, by and among Capitol Acquisition Corp., Two Harbors Investment Corp., Two Harbors Merger Corp. and Pine River Capital Management L.P. (incorporated by reference to Annex A-2 filed with Amendment No. 4)</a> .
2.3	<a href="#">Amendment No. 2 to Agreement and Plan of Merger, dated as of September 20, 2009, by and among Capitol Acquisition Corp., Two Harbors Investment Corp., Two Harbors Merger Corp. and Pine River Capital Management L.P. (incorporated by reference to Annex A-3 filed with Amendment No. 4)</a> .
3.1	<a href="#">Articles of Amendment and Restatement of Two Harbors Investment Corp. (incorporated by reference Annex B filed with Amendment No. 4)</a> .
3.2	<a href="#">Articles of Amendment to the Articles of Amendment and Restatement of Two Harbors Investment Corp. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 99.1 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on December 19, 2012)</a> .
3.3	<a href="#">Articles of Amendment to the Articles of Amendment and Restatement of Two Harbors Investment Corp., effective as of 5:01 PM Eastern Time on November 1, 2017 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.1 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on November 2, 2017)</a> .
3.4	<a href="#">Articles of Amendment to the Articles of Amendment and Restatement of Two Harbors Investment Corp., effective as of 5:02 PM Eastern Time on November 1, 2017 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.2 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on November 2, 2017)</a> .
3.5	<a href="#">Amended and Restated Bylaws of Two Harbors Investment Corp. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.4 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 6, 2017)</a> .
3.6	<a href="#">Articles Supplementary to the Articles of Amendment to the Articles of Amendment and Restatement of Two Harbors Investment Corp. designating the shares of 8.125% Series A Fixed-to-Floating Rate Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock, \$0.01 par value per share (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.3 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form 8-A filed with the SEC on March 13, 2017)</a> .
3.7	<a href="#">Articles Supplementary to the Articles of Amendment to the Articles of Amendment and Restatement of Two Harbors Investment Corp. designating the shares of 7.625% Series B Fixed-to-Floating Rate Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock, \$0.01 par value per share (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.4 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form 8-A filed with the SEC on July 17, 2017)</a> .

<u>Exhibit Number</u>	<u>Exhibit Description</u>
3.8	<a href="#">Articles Supplementary to the Articles of Amendment to the Articles of Amendment and Restatement of Two Harbors Investment Corp. designating the shares of 7.25% Series C Fixed-to-Floating Rate Cumulative Redeemable Preferred Stock, \$0.01 par value per share (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.7 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form 8-A filed with the SEC on November 22, 2017).</a>
4.1	<a href="#">Specimen Common Stock Certificate of Two Harbors Investment Corp. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.2 to Amendment No. 4).</a>
4.2	<a href="#">Specimen Series A Preferred Stock Certificate (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form 8-A filed with the SEC on March 13, 2017).</a>
4.3	<a href="#">Specimen Series B Preferred Stock Certificate (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form 8-A filed with the SEC on July 17, 2017).</a>
4.4	<a href="#">Specimen Series C Preferred Stock Certificate (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form 8-A filed with the SEC on November 22, 2017).</a>
4.5	<a href="#">Indenture (Senior Indenture) dated as of January 19, 2017, between The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., as Trustee and Two Harbors Investment Corp. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on January 19, 2017).</a>
4.6	<a href="#">Form of Subordinated Indenture.**</a>
4.7	Form of Senior Debt Security.*
4.8	Form of Subordinated Debt Security.*
4.9	Form of Preferred Stock Certificate.*
4.10	Form of Depositary Agreement.*
4.11	Form of Depositary Receipt.*
5.1	<a href="#">Opinion of Stinson Leonard Street LLP (including consent of such firm).**</a>
8.1	<a href="#">Tax opinion of Sidley Austin LLP (including consent of such firm).**</a>
23.1	<a href="#">Consent of Ernst &amp; Young LLP.**</a>
23.2	<a href="#">Consent of Stinson Leonard Street LLP (included in Exhibit 5.1).**</a>
23.3	<a href="#">Consent of Sidley Austin LLP (included in Exhibit 8.1).**</a>
24.1	<a href="#">Power of Attorney (contained on signature page).**</a>
25.1	<a href="#">Form T-1 Statement of Eligibility and Qualification under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 under the Senior Indenture.**</a>
25.2	Form T-1 Statement of Eligibility and Qualification under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 under the Subordinated Indenture.***

\* To be filed by amendment or as an exhibit to a document to be incorporated by reference herein.

\*\* Filed herewith.

\*\*\* To be filed separately pursuant to Section 305(b)(2) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, if applicable.



<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ E. SPENCER ABRAHAM</u> E. Spencer Abraham	Director	February 28, 2018
<u>/s/ JAMES J. BENDER</u> James J. Bender	Director	February 28, 2018
<u>/s/ STEPHEN G. KASNET</u> Stephen G. Kasnet	Director	February 28, 2018
<u>/s/ LISA A. POLLINA</u> Lisa A. Pollina	Director	February 28, 2018
<u>/s/ WILLIAM ROTH</u> William Roth	Chief Investment Officer and Director	February 28, 2018
<u>/s/ W. REID SANDERS</u> W. Reid Sanders	Director	February 28, 2018
<u>/s/ HOPE B. WOODHOUSE</u> Hope B. Woodhouse	Director	February 28, 2018



## TWO HARBORS INVESTMENT CORP.

and

Trustee

## INDENTURE

Dated as of \_\_\_\_\_,

Providing for Issuance of Subordinated Debt Securities in Series

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
ARTICLE I DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION	1
SECTION 1.01 DEFINITIONS	1
SECTION 1.02 COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES AND OPINIONS	9
SECTION 1.03 FORM OF DOCUMENTS DELIVERED TO TRUSTEE	10
SECTION 1.04 ACTS OF SECURITYHOLDERS	10
SECTION 1.05 NOTICES, ETC., TO TRUSTEE AND COMPANY	12
SECTION 1.06 NOTICES TO SECURITYHOLDERS; WAIVER	12
SECTION 1.07 CONFLICT WITH TRUST INDENTURE ACT	13
SECTION 1.08 EFFECT OF HEADINGS AND TABLE OF CONTENTS	13
SECTION 1.09 SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS	13
SECTION 1.10 SEVERABILITY CLAUSE	13
SECTION 1.11 BENEFITS OF INDENTURE	13
SECTION 1.12 GOVERNING LAW	13
SECTION 1.13 COUNTERPARTS	13
SECTION 1.14 JUDGMENT CURRENCY	14
SECTION 1.15 LEGAL HOLIDAYS	14
SECTION 1.16 AGENT FOR SERVICE; SUBMISSION TO JURISDICTION	14
SECTION 1.17 WAIVER OF JURY TRIAL	15
SECTION 1.18 PATRIOT ACT	15
ARTICLE II SECURITY FORMS	16
SECTION 2.01 FORMS GENERALLY	16
SECTION 2.02 FORMS OF SECURITIES	16
SECTION 2.03 FORM OF TRUSTEE'S CERTIFICATE OF AUTHENTICATION	16
SECTION 2.04 SECURITIES ISSUABLE IN THE FORM OF A GLOBAL SECURITY	17
ARTICLE III THE SECURITIES	19
SECTION 3.01 GENERAL TITLE; GENERAL LIMITATIONS; ISSUABLE IN SERIES; TERMS OF PARTICULAR SERIES	19
SECTION 3.02 DENOMINATIONS	21



---

SECTION 3.03 EXECUTION, AUTHENTICATION AND DELIVERY AND DATING	22
SECTION 3.04 TEMPORARY SECURITIES	23
SECTION 3.05 REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE	23
SECTION 3.06 MUTILATED, DESTROYED, LOST AND STOLEN SECURITIES	25
SECTION 3.07 PAYMENT OF INTEREST; INTEREST RIGHTS PRESERVED	25
SECTION 3.08 PERSONS DEEMED OWNERS	26
SECTION 3.09 CANCELLATION	27
SECTION 3.10 CUSIP AND CINS NUMBERS	27
SECTION 3.11 COMPUTATION OF INTEREST	27
ARTICLE IV SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE; DEFEASANCE	27
SECTION 4.01 SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE OF INDENTURE	27
SECTION 4.02 APPLICATION OF TRUST MONEY	28
SECTION 4.03 DEFEASANCE UPON DEPOSIT OF FUNDS OR GOVERNMENT OBLIGATIONS	29
SECTION 4.04 REINSTATEMENT	31
ARTICLE V REMEDIES	31
SECTION 5.01 EVENTS OF DEFAULT	31
SECTION 5.02 ACCELERATION OF MATURITY; RESCISSION AND ANNULMENT	32
SECTION 5.03 COLLECTION OF INDEBTEDNESS AND SUITS FOR ENFORCEMENT BY TRUSTEE	34
SECTION 5.04 TRUSTEE MAY FILE PROOFS OF CLAIM	34
SECTION 5.05 TRUSTEE MAY ENFORCE CLAIMS WITHOUT POSSESSION OF SECURITIES	35
SECTION 5.06 APPLICATION OF MONEY COLLECTED	35
SECTION 5.07 LIMITATION ON SUITS	36
SECTION 5.08 UNCONDITIONAL RIGHT OF SECURITYHOLDERS TO RECEIVE PRINCIPAL, PREMIUM AND INTEREST	36
SECTION 5.09 RESTORATION OF RIGHTS AND REMEDIES	37
SECTION 5.10 RIGHTS AND REMEDIES CUMULATIVE	37
SECTION 5.11 DELAY OR OMISSION NOT WAIVER	37
SECTION 5.12 CONTROL BY SECURITYHOLDERS	37
ii	
SECTION 5.13 WAIVER OF PAST DEFAULTS	37
SECTION 5.14 UNDERTAKING FOR COSTS	38
SECTION 5.15 WAIVER OF STAY OR EXTENSION LAWS	38
ARTICLE VI THE TRUSTEE	38
SECTION 6.01 CERTAIN DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES	38
SECTION 6.02 NOTICE OF DEFAULTS	39
SECTION 6.03 CERTAIN RIGHTS OF TRUSTEE	40
SECTION 6.04 NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR RECITALS OR ISSUANCE OF SECURITIES	42
SECTION 6.05 MAY HOLD SECURITIES	43

---

SECTION 6.06 MONEY HELD IN TRUST	43
SECTION 6.07 COMPENSATION AND REIMBURSEMENT	43
SECTION 6.08 DISQUALIFICATION; CONFLICTING INTERESTS	44
SECTION 6.09 CORPORATE TRUSTEE REQUIRED; ELIGIBILITY	44
SECTION 6.10 RESIGNATION AND REMOVAL	45
SECTION 6.11 ACCEPTANCE OF APPOINTMENT BY SUCCESSOR	46
SECTION 6.12 MERGER, CONVERSION, CONSOLIDATION OR SUCCESSION TO BUSINESS	47
SECTION 6.13 PREFERENTIAL COLLECTION OF CLAIMS AGAINST COMPANY	47
SECTION 6.14 ELECTRONIC COMMUNICATION	47
SECTION 6.15 APPOINTMENT OF AUTHENTICATING AGENT	48
SECTION 6.16 WITHHOLDING	49
SECTION 6.17 APPOINTMENT OF PAYING AGENT	50
SECTION 6.18 TRUSTEE'S DISCLAIMER	50
<b>ARTICLE VII SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY</b>	<b>50</b>
SECTION 7.01 COMPANY TO FURNISH TRUSTEE NAMES AND ADDRESSES OF SECURITYHOLDERS	50
SECTION 7.02 PRESERVATION OF INFORMATION; COMMUNICATIONS TO SECURITYHOLDERS	50
SECTION 7.03 REPORTS BY TRUSTEE	51
SECTION 7.04 REPORTS BY COMPANY	52
iii	
<hr/>	
<b>ARTICLE VIII CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE OR TRANSFER</b>	<b>52</b>
SECTION 8.01 CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE OR TRANSFER ON CERTAIN TERMS	52
SECTION 8.02 SUCCESSOR PERSON SUBSTITUTED	53
<b>ARTICLE IX SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES</b>	<b>53</b>
SECTION 9.01 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITHOUT CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS	53
SECTION 9.02 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITH CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS	54
SECTION 9.03 SUBORDINATION UNIMPAIRED	56
SECTION 9.04 EXECUTION OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	56
SECTION 9.05 EFFECT OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	56
SECTION 9.06 CONFORMITY WITH TRUST INDENTURE ACT	56
SECTION 9.07 REFERENCE IN SECURITIES TO SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	56
SECTION 9.08 NOTICE OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	56
SECTION 9.09 REVOCATION AND EFFECT OF CONSENTS, WAIVERS AND ACTIONS	57
<b>ARTICLE X COVENANTS</b>	<b>57</b>
SECTION 10.01 PAYMENT OF PRINCIPAL, PREMIUM AND INTEREST	57
SECTION 10.02 MAINTENANCE OF OFFICE OR AGENCY	57
SECTION 10.03 MONEY FOR SECURITY PAYMENTS TO BE HELD IN TRUST	58
SECTION 10.04 STATEMENT AS TO COMPLIANCE	59
SECTION 10.05 LEGAL EXISTENCE	59

SECTION 10.06 WAIVER OF CERTAIN COVENANTS	59
ARTICLE XI REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES	60
SECTION 11.01 APPLICABILITY OF ARTICLE	60
SECTION 11.02 ELECTION TO REDEEM; NOTICE TO TRUSTEE	60
SECTION 11.03 SELECTION BY TRUSTEE OF SECURITIES TO BE REDEEMED	60
SECTION 11.04 NOTICE OF REDEMPTION	61
SECTION 11.05 DEPOSIT OF REDEMPTION PRICE	62
SECTION 11.06 SECURITIES PAYABLE ON REDEMPTION DATE	62
SECTION 11.07 SECURITIES REDEEMED IN PART	62

SECTION 11.08 PROVISIONS WITH RESPECT TO ANY SINKING FUNDS	63
SECTION 11.09 RESCISSION OF REDEMPTION	64
ARTICLE XII SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES	64
SECTION 12.01 AGREEMENT OF SUBORDINATION	64
SECTION 12.02 PAYMENTS TO SECURITYHOLDERS	65
SECTION 12.03 SUBROGATION OF SECURITIES	66
SECTION 12.04 AUTHORIZATION BY SECURITYHOLDERS	67
SECTION 12.05 NOTICE TO TRUSTEE	67
SECTION 12.06 TRUSTEE'S RELATION TO SENIOR INDEBTEDNESS	68
SECTION 12.07 NO IMPAIRMENT OF SUBORDINATION	68
SECTION 12.08 RIGHTS OF TRUSTEE	68
SECTION 12.09 APPLICABLE TO PAYING AGENTS	69
ARTICLE XIII GUARANTEES	69
SECTION 13.01 GUARANTEES	69

## INDENTURE

**THIS INDENTURE** between **TWO HARBORS INVESTMENT CORP.**, a Maryland corporation (hereinafter called the "**Company**") having its principal office at 590 Madison Avenue, 36<sup>th</sup> Floor, New York, New York 10022, and \_\_\_\_\_, as trustee (hereinafter called the "**Trustee**"), is made and entered into as of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

### RECITALS OF THE COMPANY

The Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance of its debentures, notes, bonds or other evidences of indebtedness, in an unlimited aggregate principal amount, to be issued in one or more fully registered series.

This Indenture is subject to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are deemed to be incorporated into this Indenture and shall, to the extent applicable, be governed by such provisions.

All things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company in accordance with its terms have been done.

### AGREEMENTS OF THE PARTIES

To set forth or to provide for the establishment of the terms and conditions upon which the Securities are and are to be authenticated, issued and delivered, and in consideration of the premises and the purchase of Securities by the Holders thereof, it is mutually agreed as follows, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Securities or of a series thereof, as the case may be:

## ARTICLE I DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION

**Section 1.01 Definitions.** For all purposes of this Indenture and of any indenture supplemental hereto, except as otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires:

- (1) the terms defined in this Article have the meanings assigned to them in this Article, and include the plural as well as the singular;
- (2) all other terms used herein which are defined in the Trust Indenture Act or by Commission rule under the Trust Indenture Act, either directly or by reference therein, have the meanings assigned to them herein;
- (3) all accounting terms not otherwise defined herein have the meanings assigned to them in accordance with GAAP and, except as otherwise herein expressly provided, the term “generally accepted accounting principles” with respect to any computation required or permitted hereunder shall mean such accounting principles and

---

any accounting rules or interpretations promulgated by the Commission as are generally accepted in the United States of America at the date of this Indenture; and

- (4) all references in this instrument to designated “Articles”, “Sections” and other subdivisions are to the designated Articles, Sections and other subdivisions of this instrument as originally executed. The words “herein”, “hereof” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

Certain terms, used principally in Article VI, are defined in that Article.

“**Act**” when used with respect to any Securityholder, has the meaning specified in Section 1.04.

“**Affiliate**” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing.

“**Authenticating Agent**” means any Person authorized by the Company to authenticate Securities under Section 6.15.

“**Board of Directors**” means (i) the board of directors of the Company, (ii) any duly authorized committee of such board, (iii) any committee of officers of the Company or (iv) any officer of the Company acting, in the case of clauses (iii) or (iv), pursuant to authority granted by the board of directors of the Company or any committee of such board.

“**Board Resolution**” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or any Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, and delivered to the Trustee.

“**Business Day**” means, with respect to any series of Securities, unless otherwise specified in a Board Resolution, in an indenture supplemental hereto or an Officer’s Certificate with respect to a particular series of Securities, each day which is not a Saturday, Sunday or other day on which banking institutions in the pertinent Place or Places of Payment or the city in which the Corporate Trust Office is located are authorized or required by law or executive order to be closed.

“**Closing Price**” of the Common Stock or other Marketable Security, as the case may be, shall mean the last reported sale price of such stock or other Marketable Security (regular way) as shown on the Composite Tape of the NYSE (or, if such stock or other Marketable Security is not listed or admitted to trading on the NYSE, on the principal national securities exchange on which such stock or other Marketable Security is listed or admitted to trading, including the NASDAQ), or, in case no such sale takes place on such day, the average of the closing bid and asked prices on the NYSE (or, if such stock or other Marketable Security is not listed or admitted to trading on the NYSE, on the principal national securities exchange on which such stock or

other Marketable Security is listed or admitted to trading, including the NASDAQ), or if such stock or other Marketable Security is not so reported, the average of the closing bid and asked prices as furnished by any member of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, selected from time to time by the Company for that purpose.

“**Commission**” means the Securities and Exchange Commission, as from time to time constituted, created under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or, if at any time after the execution of this instrument such Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties at such time.

“**Common Stock**” shall mean the Common Stock, par value \$0.01 per share, of the Company authorized at the date of this Indenture as originally signed, or any other class of stock resulting from successive changes or reclassifications of such Common Stock, and in any such case including any shares thereof authorized after the date of this Indenture.

“**Company**” means the Person named as the “Company” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Company” shall mean such successor.

“**Company Request**”, “**Company Order**” and “**Company Consent**” mean a written request, order or consent, respectively, signed in the name of the Company by its Chairman of the Board, President, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer, Controller, General Counsel, Secretary or any Vice President, and delivered to the Trustee.

“**Conversion Price**” means, with respect to any series of Securities which are convertible into Common Stock or other Marketable Securities, the price per share of Common Stock or the price per designated unit of other Marketable Security at which the Securities of such series are so convertible as set forth in the Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto with respect to such series (or in any indenture supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to Section 9.01(9) with respect to such series), as the same may be adjusted from time to time in accordance with an indenture supplemental hereto.

“**Corporate Trust Office**” means the office of the Trustee at which at any particular time its corporate trust business shall be principally administered, which office at the date hereof is located at:

“**Current Market Price**” on any date shall mean the average of the daily Closing Prices per share of Common Stock or of such other Marketable Securities for any 30 consecutive

Trading Days selected by the Company prior to the day in question, which 30 consecutive Trading Day period shall not commence more than 45 Trading Days prior to the day in question.

“**Defaulted Interest**” has the meaning specified in Section 3.07.

“**Depository**” means, unless otherwise specified by the Company pursuant to either Section 2.04 or 3.01, with respect to Securities of any series issuable or issued as a Global Security, The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York, or any successor thereto registered as a clearing agency under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or other applicable statute or regulation. “**Discharged**” has the meaning specified in Section 4.03.

“**Event of Default**” has the meaning specified in Article V.

“**Federal Bankruptcy Act**” has the meaning specified in Section 5.01(5).

“**GAAP**” means generally accepted accounting principles as such principles are in effect in the United States as of the date of this Indenture. “**Global Security**”, when used with respect to any series of Securities issued hereunder, means a Security which is executed by the Company and authenticated and delivered by the Trustee to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository’s instruction, all in accordance with this Indenture and an indenture supplemental hereto, if any, or Board Resolution and pursuant to a Company Request, which shall be registered in the name of the Depository or its nominee and which shall represent, and shall be denominated in an amount equal to the aggregate principal amount of, all of the Outstanding Securities of such series or any portion thereof, in either case having the same terms, including, without limitation, the same original issue date, date or dates on which principal is due, and interest rate or method of determining interest.

“**Guarantee**” means the guarantees specified in Section 13.01.

“**Guarantor**” means any Person who guarantees any series of Securities issued hereunder as specified in Section 13.01.

“**Holder**”, when used with respect to any Security, means a Securityholder, which means a Person in whose name a security is registered in the Security Register. “**Indenture**” or “**this Indenture**” means this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof and shall include the terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated by Section 3.01.

“**Interest**”, with respect to the Securities, means interest on the Securities; provided, that, when used with respect to an Original Issue Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, the term means interest payable after Maturity.

“**Interest Payment Date**”, when used with respect to any series of Securities, means the Stated Maturity of any installment of interest on those Securities.

“**Judgment Currency**” has the meaning specified in Section 1.14.

“**Marketable Security**” means any common stock, debt security or other security of a Person which is (or will, upon distribution thereof, be) listed on the NYSE, the NYSE Amex, NASDAQ or any other national securities exchange registered under Section 6 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or approved for quotation in any system of automated dissemination of quotations of securities prices in the United States or for which there is a recognized market maker or trading market.

“**Maturity**”, when used with respect to any Securities, means the date on which the principal of any such Security becomes due and payable as therein or herein provided, whether on a Repayment Date, at the Stated Maturity or by declaration of acceleration, call for redemption or otherwise.

“**NASDAQ**” shall mean the NASDAQ Global Select Market, the NASDAQ Global Market or the NASDAQ Capital Market.

“**NYSE**” shall mean the New York Stock Exchange, Inc.

“**Officers’ Certificate**” means a certificate signed by the Chairman of the Board, President, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer, Controller, General Counsel, Secretary or any Vice President, and delivered to the Trustee. Wherever this Indenture requires that an Officers’ Certificate be signed also by a financial expert or an accountant or other expert, such financial expert, accountant or other expert (except as otherwise expressly provided in this Indenture) may be in the employ of the Company, and shall be acceptable to the Trustee.

“**Opinion of Counsel**” means a written opinion of counsel, who may (except as otherwise expressly provided in this Indenture) be an employee of or of counsel to the Company, which is delivered to the Trustee.

“**Original Issue Discount Security**” means (i) any Security which provides for an amount less than the principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof, and (ii) any other security which is issued with “original issue discount” within the meaning of Section 1273(a) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the regulations thereunder.

“**Outstanding**”, when used with respect to the Securities or Securities of any series, means, as of the date of determination, all such Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, except:

- (i) such Securities theretofore canceled by the Trustee or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation;
- (ii) such Securities for whose payment or redemption money in the necessary amount has been theretofore deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent in trust for the Holders of such Securities; provided that, if such Securities are to be redeemed, notice of such redemption has been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee has been made; and

(iii) such Securities in exchange for or in lieu of which other Securities have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to this Indenture, or which shall have been paid pursuant to the terms of Section 3.06 (except with respect to any such Security as to which proof satisfactory to the Trustee is presented that such Security is held by a Person in whose hands such Security is a legal, valid and binding obligation of the Company).

In determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of such Securities Outstanding have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver hereunder, (i) the principal amount of any Original Issue Discount Security that shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount of the principal thereof that would be due and payable as of the date of the taking of such action upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof, and (ii) Securities owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor, as identified to the trustee pursuant to an Officer's Certificate, shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding.

**"Paying Agent"** means any Person authorized by the Company to pay the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Securities on behalf of the Company.

**"Person"** means any individual, corporation, limited liability company, partnership, joint venture, association, joint-stock company, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

**"Place of Payment"** means with respect to any series of Securities issued hereunder the city or political subdivision so designated with respect to the series of Securities in question in accordance with the provisions of Section 3.01.

**"Predecessor Securities"** of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 3.06 in lieu of a lost, destroyed or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the lost, destroyed or stolen Security.

**"Redemption Date"**, when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the date fixed for such redemption by or pursuant to this Indenture. **"Redemption Price"**, when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the price specified in the Security at which it is to be redeemed pursuant to this Indenture.

**"Redemption Rescission Event"** shall mean the occurrence of (a) any general suspension of trading in, or limitation on prices for, securities on the principal national securities exchange on which shares of Common Stock or Marketable Securities are registered and listed for trading (or, if shares of Common Stock or Marketable Securities are not registered and listed for trading on any such exchange, in the over-the-counter market) for more than six-and-one-half (6-1/2) consecutive trading hours, (b) any decline in either the Dow Jones Industrial Average or the S&P 500 Index (or any successor index published by Dow Jones & Company, Inc. or S&P) by either (i) an amount in excess of 10%, measured from the close of business on any Trading Day to the close of business on the next succeeding Trading Day during the period commencing

on the Trading Day preceding the day notice of any redemption of Securities is given (or, if such notice is given after the close of business on a Trading Day, commencing on such Trading Day) and ending at the time and date fixed for redemption in such notice or (ii) an amount in excess of 15% (or if the time and date fixed for redemption is more than 15 days following the date on which such notice of redemption is given, 20%), measured from the close of business on the Trading Day preceding the day notice of such redemption is given (or, if such notice is given after the close of business on a Trading Day, from such Trading Day) to the close of business on any Trading Day at or prior to the time and date fixed for redemption, (c) a declaration of a banking moratorium or any suspension of payments in respect of banks by Federal or state authorities in the United States or (d) the occurrence of an act of terrorism or commencement of a war or armed hostilities or other national or international calamity directly or indirectly involving the United States which in the reasonable judgment of the Company could have a material adverse effect on the market for the Common Stock or Marketable Securities.

**"Regular Record Date"** for the interest payable on any Security on any Interest Payment Date means the date specified in such Security as the Regular Record Date.

**"Repayment Date"**, when used with respect to any Security to be repaid, means the date fixed for such repayment pursuant to such Security.

**"Repayment Price"**, when used with respect to any Security to be repaid, means the price at which it is to be repaid pursuant to such Security. **"Required Currency"**, when used with respect to any Security, has the meaning set forth in Section 1.14.

**"Responsible Officer"**, when used with respect to the Trustee, means any officer of the Trustee with direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture and also means, with respect to a particular corporate trust matter, any other officer to whom such matter is referred because of his knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject. **"Responsible Officer"**, when used with respect to the Company, means any of the Chairman of the Board, President, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer, Controller, General Counsel, Secretary or any Vice President (or any equivalent of the foregoing officers).

**"S&P"** means Standard & Poor's Rating Service or any successor to the rating agency business thereto.

**"Security"** or **"Securities"** means any note or notes, bond or bonds, debenture or debentures, or any other evidences of indebtedness, as the case may be, of any series authenticated and delivered from time to time under this Indenture.

**"Security Register"** shall have the meaning specified in Section 3.05.

**"Security Registrar"** means the Person who keeps the Security Register specified in Section 3.05.

**"Securityholder"** means a Person in whose name a security is registered in the Security Register.

**"Senior Indebtedness"** of the Company or a Guarantor, as the case may be, means the principal of, premium, if any, interest on, and any other payment due pursuant to any of the following, whether outstanding at the date hereof or hereafter incurred or created:

(i) all indebtedness of such Person for borrowed money (including any indebtedness secured by a mortgage, conditional sales contract or other lien which is (a) given to secure all or part of the purchase price of property subject thereto, whether given to the vendor of such property or to another or

(b) existing on property at the time of acquisition thereof);

- (ii) all indebtedness of such Person evidenced by notes, debentures, bonds or other similar interests sold by such Person for money;
- (iii) all lease obligations of such Person which are capitalized on the books of such Person in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
- (iv) all indebtedness of others of the kinds described in either of the preceding clauses (i) or (ii) and all lease obligations of others of the kind described in the preceding clause (iii) assumed by or guaranteed in any manner by such Person or in effect guaranteed by such Person through an agreement to purchase, contingent or otherwise; and
- (vi) all renewals, extensions or refundings of indebtedness of the kinds described in any of the preceding clauses (i), (ii) and (iv) and all renewals or extensions of lease obligations of the kinds described in either of the preceding clauses (iii) and (iv); unless, in the case of any particular indebtedness, guarantee, lease, renewal, extension or refunding, the instrument or lease creating or evidencing the same or the assumption or guarantee of the same expressly provides that such indebtedness, lease, renewal, extension or refunding is not superior in right of payment to the Securities or the Guarantees, as the case may be.

“**Significant Subsidiary**” means any Subsidiary which would be a “significant subsidiary” as defined in Article 1, Rule 1-02 of Regulation S-X, promulgated pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933, as in effect on the date of this Indenture.

“**Special Record Date**” for the payment of any Defaulted Interest means a date fixed by the Trustee pursuant to Section 3.07.

“**Stated Maturity**” when used with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon means the date specified in such Security as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable.

“**Subsidiary**” means, with respect to any Person, any corporation more than 50% of the voting stock of which is owned directly or indirectly by such Person, and any partnership,

8

---

association, joint venture or other entity in which such Person owns more than 50% of the equity interests or has the power to elect a majority of the board of directors or other governing body.

“**Trading Day**” shall mean, with respect to the Common Stock or a Marketable Security, so long as the common stock or such Marketable Security, as the case may be, is listed or admitted to trading on the NYSE, a day on which the NYSE is open for the transaction of business, or, if the Common Stock or such Marketable Security, as the case may be, is not listed or admitted to trading on the NYSE, a day on which the principal national securities exchange on which the Common Stock or such Marketable Security, as the case may be, is listed is open for the transaction of business, or, if the Common Stock or such Marketable Security, as the case may be, is not so listed or admitted for trading on any national securities exchange, a day on which the member of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority selected by the Company to provide pricing information for the Common Stock or such Marketable Security is open for the transaction of business.

“**Trust Indenture Act**” or “**TIA**” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as in force at the date as of which this instrument was executed; provided, however, that, in the event the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 is amended after such date, “**Trust Indenture Act**” or “**TIA**” means, to the extent required by any such amendment, the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as so amended.

“**Trustee**” means the Person named as the Trustee in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Trustee” shall mean and include each Person who is then a Trustee hereunder. If at any time there is more than one such Person, “Trustee” as used with respect to the Securities of any series shall mean the Trustee with respect to Securities of that series.

“**Vice President**” when used with respect to the Company or the Trustee means any vice president, whether or not designated by a number or a word or words added before or after the title “vice president”, including without limitation, an assistant vice president.

“**Voting Stock**”, as applied to the stock of any corporation, means stock of any class or classes (however designated) having by the terms thereof ordinary voting power to elect a majority of the members of the board of directors (or other governing body) of such corporation other than stock having such power only by reason of the happening of a contingency.

“**Yield to Maturity**” means the yield to maturity on a series of Securities, calculated by the Company at the time of issuance of such series of Securities, or, if applicable, at the most recent redetermination of interest on such series, in accordance with accepted financial practice.

**Section 1.02 Compliance Certificates and Opinions.** Upon any application or request by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any provision of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee an Officers’ Certificate stating that all conditions precedent, if any (including any covenants compliance with which constitutes a condition precedent), provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel stating that in the opinion of such Counsel (i) such action is authorized or permitted under the Indenture and (ii) all such conditions precedent, if any

9

---

(including any covenants compliance with which constitutes a condition precedent), have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or request as to which the furnishing of such documents is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or request, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

Every certificate or opinion with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant provided for in this Indenture (other than annual statements of compliance provided pursuant to Section 10.04) shall include:

- (1) a statement that each individual signing such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition and the definitions herein relating thereto;

(2) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;

(3) a statement that, in the opinion of each such individual, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and

(4) a statement as to whether, in the opinion of each such individual, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

**Section 1.03 Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee.** In any case where several matters are required to be certified by, or covered by an opinion of, any specified Person, it is not necessary that all such matters be certified by, or covered by the opinion of, only one such Person, or that they be so certified or covered by only one document, but one such Person may certify or give an opinion with respect to some matters and one or more other such Persons may certify or give an opinion as to the other matters, and any such Person may certify or give an opinion as to such matters in one or several documents.

Any certificate of an officer of the Company or Opinion of Counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, counsel, unless such officer knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate or opinion is based are erroneous. Any such certificate or Opinion of Counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an officer or officers of the Company stating that the information with respect to such factual matters is in the possession of the Company, unless such counsel knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to such matters are erroneous.

Where any Person is required to make, give or execute two or more applications, requests, consents, certificates, statements, opinions or other instruments under this Indenture, they may, but need not, be consolidated and form one instrument.

#### **Section 1.04 Acts of Securityholders.**

10

---

(a) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be given or taken by Securityholders or Securityholders of any series may be embodied in and evidenced by one or more instruments of substantially similar tenor signed by such Securityholders in person or by an agent duly appointed in writing or may be embodied in or evidenced by an electronic transmission which identifies the documents containing the proposal on which such consent is requested and certifies such Securityholders' consent thereto and agreement to be bound thereby; and, except as herein otherwise expressly provided, such action shall become effective when such instrument or instruments are delivered to the Trustee, and, where it is hereby expressly required, to the Company. If any Securities are denominated in coin or currency other than that of the United States, then for the purposes of determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of Securities have taken any action as herein described, the principal amount of such Securities shall be deemed to be that amount of United States dollars that could be obtained for such principal amount on the basis of the spot rate of exchange into United States dollars for the currency in which such Securities are denominated (as evidenced to the Trustee by an Officers' Certificate) as of the date the taking of such action by the Holders of such requisite principal amount is evidenced to the Trustee as provided in the immediately preceding sentence. If any Securities are Original Issue Discount Securities, then for the purposes of determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of Securities have taken any action as herein described, the principal amount of such Original Issue Discount Securities shall be deemed to be the amount of the principal thereof that would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof as of the date the taking of such action by the Holders of such requisite principal amount is evidenced to the Trustee as provided in the first sentence of this Section 1.04(a). Such instrument or instruments (and the action embodied therein and evidenced thereby) are herein sometimes referred to as the "Act" of the Securityholders signing such instrument or instruments. Proof of execution of any such instrument or of a writing appointing any such agent shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and (subject to Section 6.01) conclusive in favor of the Trustee and the Company, if made in the manner provided in this Section.

(b) The fact and date of the execution by any Person of any such instrument or writing may be proved by the affidavit of a witness to such execution or by the certificate of any notary public or other officer authorized by law to take acknowledgments of deeds, certifying that the individual signing such instrument or writing acknowledged to him the execution thereof. Where such execution is by an officer of a corporation or a member of a partnership, on behalf of such corporation or partnership, such certificate or affidavit shall also constitute sufficient proof of his authority. The fact and date of the execution of any such instrument or writing, or the authority of the person executing the same, may also be proved in any other manner which the Trustee deems sufficient.

(c) The ownership of Securities shall be proved by the Security Register.

(d) If the Company shall solicit from the Holders any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, the Company may, at its option, fix in advance a record date for the determination of Holders entitled to give such

11

---

request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, but the Company shall have no obligation to do so. Such record date shall be the later of 10 days prior to the first solicitation of such action or the date of the most recent list of Holders furnished to the Trustee pursuant to Section 7.01. If such a record date is fixed, such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action may be given before or after the record date, but only the Holders of record at the close of business on the record date shall be deemed to be Holders for the purposes of determining whether Holders of the requisite proportion of Securities outstanding have authorized or agreed or consented to such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, and for that purpose the Securities outstanding shall be computed as of the record date; provided that no such authorization, agreement or consent by the Holders on the record date shall be deemed effective unless it shall become effective pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture not later than six months after the record date, and that no such authorization, agreement or consent may be amended, withdrawn or revoked once given by a Holder, unless the Company shall provide for such amendment, withdrawal or revocation in conjunction with such solicitation of authorizations, agreements or consents or unless and to the extent required by applicable law.

(e) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action by the Holder of any Security shall bind the Holder of every Security issued upon the registration of transfer thereof or in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof, in respect of anything done or suffered to be done by the Trustee or the Company in reliance thereon whether or not notation of such action is made upon such Security.

**Section 1.05 Notices, etc., to Trustee and Company** **Section 1.06** . Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Securityholders or other document provided or permitted by this Indenture to be made upon, given or furnished to, or filed with:



(1) the Trustee by any Securityholder or by the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished or filed in writing to or with the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, Attention: Corporate Trust Administration; or

(2) the Company by the Trustee or by any Securityholder shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder (except as provided in Section 5.01(4) or, in the case of a request for repayment, as specified in the Security carrying the right to repayment) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to the Company addressed to it at the address of its principal office specified in the first paragraph of this instrument, Attention: Chief Financial Officer, or at the address last furnished in writing to the Trustee by the Company.

**Section 1.06 Notices to Securityholders; Waiver.** Where this Indenture or any Security provides for notice to Securityholders of any event, such notice shall be sufficiently given (unless otherwise herein or in such Security expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each Securityholder affected by such event, at his address as it appears in the Security Register, not later than the latest date, and not earlier than the earliest date, prescribed for the giving of such notice. In any case where notice to Securityholders is given by

12

---

mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Securityholder shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Securityholders. With respect to notice for Securities in Global Securities in book entry form, notice shall be sufficiently given when posted with the Depository in accordance with its normal procedures. Where this Indenture or any Security provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the Person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Securityholders shall be filed with the Trustee, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

In case, by reason of the suspension of regular mail service as a result of a strike, work stoppage or otherwise, it shall be impractical to mail notice of any event to any Securityholder when such notice is required to be given pursuant to any provision of this Indenture, then any method of notification as shall be satisfactory to the Trustee and the Company shall be deemed to be a sufficient giving of such notice.

**Section 1.07 Conflict with Trust Indenture Act.** If and to the extent that any provision hereof limits, qualifies or conflicts with the duties imposed by, or with another provision (an “incorporated provision”) included in this Indenture by operation of, any of Sections 310 to 318, inclusive, of the Trust Indenture Act, such imposed duties or incorporated provision shall control.

**Section 1.08 Effect of Headings and Table of Contents.** The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

**Section 1.09 Successors and Assigns.** All covenants and agreements in this Indenture by the Company and the Guarantors, if any, shall bind their respective successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

**Section 1.10 Severability Clause.** In case any provision in this Indenture or in the Securities shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

**Section 1.11 Benefits of Indenture.** Nothing in this Indenture or in any Securities, express or implied, shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and their successors hereunder, any Authenticating Agent or Paying Agent, the Security Registrar and the Holders of Securities (or such of them as may be affected thereby), any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture.

**Section 1.12 Governing Law.** This Indenture shall be construed in accordance with and governed by the laws of the State of New York.

**Section 1.13 Counterparts.** This instrument may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

13

---

**Section 1.14 Judgment Currency.** The Company agrees, to the fullest extent that it may effectively do so under applicable law, that (a) if for the purpose of obtaining judgment in any court it is necessary to convert the sum due in respect of the principal of, or premium or interest, if any, on the Securities of any series (the “**Required Currency**”) into a currency in which a judgment will be rendered (the “**Judgment Currency**”), the rate of exchange used shall be the rate at which in accordance with normal banking procedures the Trustee could purchase in the City of New York the Required Currency with the Judgment Currency on the New York Banking Day preceding that on which a final unappealable judgment is given and (b) its obligations under this Indenture to make payments in the Required Currency (i) shall not be discharged or satisfied by any tender, or any recovery pursuant to any judgment (whether or not entered in accordance with subsection (a)), in any currency other than the Required Currency, except to the extent that such tender or recovery shall result in the actual receipt, by the payee, of the full amount of the Required Currency expressed to be payable in respect of such payments, (ii) shall be enforceable as an alternative or additional cause of action for the purpose of recovering in the Required Currency the amount, if any, by which such actual receipt shall fall short of the full amount of the Required Currency so expressed to be payable and (iii) shall not be affected by judgment being obtained for any other sum due under this Indenture. For purposes of the foregoing, “New York Banking Day” means any day except a Saturday, Sunday or a legal holiday in the City of New York or a day on which banking institutions in the City of New York are authorized or required by law or executive order to close.

**Section 1.15 Legal Holidays.** In any case where any Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, date established for payment of Defaulted Interest pursuant to Section 3.07, Stated Maturity or Maturity with respect to any Security or other day on which principal or interest is due, shall not be a Business Day, then (notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture or any Security) payment of principal or interest need not be made on such date, but may be made on the next succeeding Business Day with the same force and effect as if made on the Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, date established for payment of Defaulted Interest pursuant to Section 3.07 or Stated Maturity or Maturity; provided that no interest shall accrue for the period from and after such Interest Payment Date or other such day, Redemption Date, date established for payment of Defaulted Interest pursuant to Section 3.07, Stated Maturity or Maturity, as the case may be, to the next succeeding Business Day.

**Section 1.16 Agent for Service; Submission to Jurisdiction.**

(a) The Company, each Guarantor and, by acceptance of a Security, each Securityholder agrees that any suit, action or proceeding arising out of or based upon this Indenture or the transactions contemplated hereby may be instituted in any State or Federal court in The City of New York, New York, and waives any objection which it may now or hereafter have to the laying of venue of any such proceeding, and irrevocably submits to the nonexclusive jurisdiction of such courts in any suit, action or proceeding. The Company and each Guarantor shall maintain in the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York an office or agency to act as its authorized agent (the “Authorized Agent”) upon whom process may be served in any suit, action or proceeding arising out of or based upon this Indenture, any

respect of any such suit, action or proceeding. The Company shall give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and of any change in the location, of such office or agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain such office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee. The Company and each Guarantor further agree to take any and all action as may be necessary to maintain an appointment of an Authorized agent in full force and effect for a period of ten years from the date of this Indenture. If for any reason the Authorized Agent shall cease to be available to act as such authorized agent for the Company and any Guarantor, the Company and each Guarantor agree to designate a new agent in the State of New York on the terms and for the purpose of this Section 1.16. The Company and each Guarantor hereby represent and warrant that the Authorized Agent has accepted such appointment and has agreed to act as said agent for service of process, and the Company and each Guarantor agree to take any and all action, including the filing of any and all documents that may be necessary to continue such appointment in full force and effect as aforesaid. Service of process upon the Authorized Agent shall be deemed, in every respect, effective service of process upon the Company.

(b) The Company and each of the Guarantors irrevocably appoints \_\_\_\_\_, with address at \_\_\_\_\_, United States, as its Authorized Agent on which any and all legal process may be served in any such action, suit or proceeding brought in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York or in any New York State court (in either case sitting in Manhattan, New York City) in connection with this Indenture or the Securities. The Company and each of the Guarantors agrees that service of process in respect of it upon such agent, together with written notice of such service sent to it in the manner provided for in Section 1.16, shall be deemed to be effective service of process upon it in any such action, suit or proceeding. The Company and each of the Guarantors agrees that the failure of such agent to give notice to it of any such service of process shall not impair or affect the validity of such service or any judgment rendered in any action, suit or proceeding based thereon. Nothing herein shall in any way be deemed to limit the ability of the Trustee to serve any such legal process in any other manner permitted by applicable law or to obtain jurisdiction over the Company or bring actions, suits or proceedings against it in such other jurisdictions, and in such manner, as may be permitted by applicable law.

**Section 1.17 Waiver of Jury Trial.** THE COMPANY, EACH GUARANTOR, THE TRUSTEE AND EACH HOLDER OF ANY SECURITY BY HIS ACCEPTANCE THEREOF HEREBY WAIVE ALL RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY ACTION, PROCEEDING OR COUNTERCLAIM (WHETHER BASED ON CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS INDENTURE OR THE TRANSACTIONS CONTEMPLATED HEREBY.

**Section 1.18 Patriot Act.** In order to comply with laws, rules, regulations and executive orders in effect from time to time applicable to banking institutions, including those relating to the funding of terrorist activities and money laundering (“Specified Law”), \_\_\_\_\_ is required to obtain, verify and record certain information relating to individuals and entities which maintain a business relationship with \_\_\_\_\_. Accordingly, the Company, each Guarantor

and, by its acceptance of a Security, each Securityholder, agrees to provide to \_\_\_\_\_ upon its request from time to time such identifying information and documentation as may be available for such party in order to enable \_\_\_\_\_ to comply with Specified Law.

## ARTICLE II SECURITY FORMS

**Section 2.01 Forms Generally.** The Securities shall have such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by this Indenture and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification and such legends or endorsements placed thereon, as may be required to comply with the rules of any securities exchange, or as may, consistently herewith, be determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of the Securities. Any portion of the text of any Security may be set forth on the reverse thereof, with an appropriate reference thereto on the face of the Security.

The definitive Securities shall be printed, lithographed or engraved or produced by any combination of these methods on steel engraved borders or may be produced in any other manner, all as determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities, subject, with respect to the Securities of any series, to the rules of any securities exchange on which such Securities are listed.

**Section 2.02 Forms of Securities.** Each Security shall be in one of the forms approved from time to time by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto.

Prior to the delivery of a Security to the Trustee for authentication in any form approved by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, the Company shall deliver to the Trustee the Board Resolution by or pursuant to which such form of Security has been approved, which Board Resolution shall have attached thereto a true and correct copy of the form of Security which has been approved thereby or, if a Board Resolution authorizes a specific officer or officers to approve a form of Security, a certificate of such officer or officers approving the form of Security attached thereto. Any form of Security approved by or pursuant to a Board Resolution must be acceptable as to form to the Trustee, such acceptance to be evidenced by the Trustee’s authentication of Securities in that form or a certificate signed by a Responsible Officer of the Trustee and delivered to the Company.

**Section 2.03 Form of Trustee’s Certificate of Authentication.** The form of Trustee’s Certificate of Authentication for any Security issued pursuant to this Indenture shall be substantially as follows:

### TRUSTEE’S CERTIFICATE OF AUTHENTICATION

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

[TRUSTEE]

By \_\_\_\_\_

**Section 2.04 Securities Issuable in the Form of a Global Security.**

(a) If the Company shall establish pursuant to Sections 2.02 and 3.01 that the Securities of a particular series are to be issued in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities, then the Company shall execute and the Trustee or its agent shall, in accordance with Section 3.03 and the Company Order delivered to the Trustee or its agent thereunder, authenticate and deliver, such Global Security or Securities, which (i) shall represent, and shall be denominated in an amount equal to the aggregate principal amount of, the Outstanding Securities of such series to be represented by such Global Security or Securities, or such portion thereof as the Company shall specify in a Company Order, (ii) shall be registered in the name of the Depository for such Global Security or Securities or its nominee, (iii) shall be delivered by the Trustee or its agent to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository's instruction and (iv) shall bear a legend substantially to the following effect: "Unless this certificate is presented by an authorized representative of the Depository to Issuer or its agent for registration of transfer, exchange, or payment, and any certificate issued is registered in the name of the nominee of the Depository or in such other name as is requested by an authorized representative of the Depository (and any payment is made to the nominee of the Depository or to such other entity as is requested by an authorized representative of the Depository), ANY TRANSFER, PLEDGE, OR OTHER USE HEREOF FOR VALUE OR OTHERWISE BY OR TO ANY PERSON IS WRONGFUL inasmuch as the registered owner hereof, the nominee of the Depository, has an interest herein."

(b) Notwithstanding anything in the Indenture or any supplemental indenture to the contrary, for any Global Security, the Trustee may deliver notices to Holders in accordance with the requirements of the applicable Depository as a substitute for any other method provided for herein.

(c) Notwithstanding any other provision of this Section 2.04 or of Section 3.05, and subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) below, unless the terms of a Global Security expressly permit such Global Security to be exchanged in whole or in part for individual Securities, a Global Security may be transferred, in whole but not in part and in the manner provided in Section 3.05, only to a nominee of the Depository for such Global Security, or to the Depository, or a successor Depository for such Global Security selected or approved by the Company, or to a nominee of such successor Depository.

(d) (i) If at any time the Depository for a Global Security notifies the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depository for such Global Security or if at any time the Depository for the Securities for such series shall no longer be

17

eligible or in good standing under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or other applicable statute or regulation, the Company shall appoint a successor Depository with respect to such Global Security. If a successor Depository for such Global Security is not appointed by the Company within 90 days after the Company receives such notice or becomes aware of such ineligibility, the Company will execute, and the Trustee or its agent, upon receipt of a Company Request for the authentication and delivery of individual Securities of such series in exchange for such Global Security, will authenticate and deliver, individual Securities of such series of like tenor and terms in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security in exchange for such Global Security.

(ii) The Company may at any time and in its sole discretion determine that the Securities of any series or portion thereof issued or issuable in the form of one or more Global Securities shall no longer be represented by such Global Security or Securities. In such event the Company will execute, and the Trustee, upon receipt of a Company Request for the authentication and delivery of individual Securities of such series in exchange in whole or in part for such Global Security, will authenticate and deliver individual Securities of such series of like tenor and terms in definitive form in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of such Global Security or Securities representing such series or portion thereof in exchange for such Global Security or Securities.

(iii) If specified by the Company pursuant to Sections 2.02 and 3.02 with respect to Securities issued or issuable in the form of a Global Security, the Depository for such Global Security may surrender such Global Security in exchange in whole or in part for individual Securities of such series of like tenor and terms in definitive form on such terms as are acceptable to the Company and such Depository. Thereupon the Company shall execute, and the Trustee or its agent shall authenticate and deliver, without service charge, (1) to each Person specified by such Depository a new Security or Securities of the same series of like tenor and terms and of any authorized denomination as requested by such Person in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for such Person's beneficial interest as specified by such Depository in the Global Security; and (2) to such Depository a new Global Security of like tenor and terms and in an authorized denomination equal to the difference, if any, between the principal amount of the surrendered Global Security and the aggregate principal amount of Securities delivered to Holders thereof.

(iv) In any exchange provided for in any of the preceding three paragraphs, the Company will execute and the Trustee or its agent will authenticate and deliver individual Securities in definitive registered form in authorized denominations. Upon the exchange of the entire principal amount of a Global Security for individual Securities, such Global Security shall be canceled by the Trustee or its agent. Except as provided in the preceding paragraph, Securities issued in exchange for a Global Security pursuant to this Section shall be registered in such names and in such authorized denominations as the Depository for such Global Security, pursuant to instructions from its direct or

18

indirect participants or otherwise, shall instruct the Trustee or the Security Registrar. The Trustee or the Security Registrar shall deliver at its Corporate Trust Office such Securities to the Persons in whose names such Securities are so registered.

### ARTICLE III THE SECURITIES

**Section 3.01 General Title; General Limitations; Issuable in Series; Terms of Particular Series.** The aggregate principal amount of Securities which may be authenticated and delivered and Outstanding under this Indenture is not limited.

The Securities may be issued in one or more series as from time to time may be authorized by the Board of Directors. There shall be established in an indenture supplemental hereto, subject to Section 3.12, prior to the issuance of Securities of any such series:

(1) the title of the Securities of such series (which shall distinguish the Securities of such series from Securities of any other series);

- (2) the Person to whom any interest on a Security of such series shall be payable, if other than the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest;
- (3) the date or dates on which the principal of the Securities of such series is payable;
- (4) the rate or rates (or manner of calculation thereof) at which the Securities of such series shall bear interest, if any, the date or dates from which such interest shall accrue, the Interest Payment Dates on which any such interest shall be payable and the Regular Record Date for any interest payable on any Interest Payment Date;
- (5) the place or places where the principal of and any premium and interest on Securities of such series shall be payable;
- (6) the period or periods within which, the Redemption Price or Prices or the Repayment Price or Prices, as the case may be, at which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of such series may be redeemed or repaid (including the applicability of Section 11.09), as the case may be, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company or the Holder;
- (7) the obligation, if any, of the Company to purchase Securities of such series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions or at the option of a Holder thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of such series shall be purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;

19

---

- (8) if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which Securities of such series shall be issuable;
- (9) provisions, if any, with regard to the conversion or exchange of the Securities of such series, at the option of the Holders thereof or the Company, as the case may be, for or into new Securities of a different series or other securities;
- (10) if other than U.S. dollars, the currency or currencies or units based on or related to currencies in which the Securities of such series shall be denominated and in which payments of principal of, and any premium and interest on, such Securities shall or may be payable;
- (11) if the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of such series are to be payable, at the election of the Company or a Holder thereof, in a coin or currency (including a composite currency) other than that in which the Securities are stated to be payable, the period or periods within which, and the terms and conditions upon which, such election may be made;
- (12) if the amount of payments of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of such series may be determined with reference to an index based on a coin or currency (including a composite currency) other than that in which the Securities are stated to be payable, the manner in which such amounts shall be determined;
- (13) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of such series pursuant to Sections 3.04, 3.05, 3.06, 9.06 and 11.07 and except for any Securities which, pursuant to Section 3.03, are deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder);
- (14) provisions, if any, with regard to the exchange of Securities of such series, at the option of the Holders thereof, for other Securities of the same series of the same aggregate principal amount or of a different authorized series or different authorized denomination or denominations, or both;
- (15) provisions, if any, with regard to the appointment by the Company of an Authenticating Agent in one or more places other than the location of the office of the Trustee with power to act on behalf of the Trustee and subject to its direction in the authentication and delivery of the Securities of any one or more series in connection with such transactions as shall be specified in the provisions of this Indenture or indenture supplemental hereto;
- (16) the portion of the principal amount of Securities of the series, if other than the principal amount thereof, which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.02 or provable in bankruptcy pursuant to Section 5.04;

20

---

- (17) any Event of Default with respect to the Securities of such series, if not set forth herein, and any additions, deletions or other changes to the Events of Default set forth herein that shall be applicable to the Securities of such series;
- (18) any covenant solely for the benefit of the Securities of such series and any additions, deletions or other changes to the provisions of Article VIII, Article X or Section 1.01 or any definitions relating to such Article that would otherwise be applicable to the Securities of such series;
- (19) if Section 4.03 of this Indenture shall not be applicable to the Securities of such series and if Section 4.03 shall be applicable to any covenant or Event of Default established in an indenture supplemental hereto as described above that has not already been established herein;
- (20) any amendments or modifications to the subordination provisions in Article XII;
- (21) if the Securities of such series shall be issued in whole or in part in the form of a Global Security or Securities, the terms and conditions, if any, upon which such Global Security or Securities may be exchanged in whole or in part for other individual Securities; and the Depository for such Global Security or Securities;
- (22) if the Securities of such series shall be guaranteed, the terms and conditions of such Guarantees and provisions for the accession of the guarantors to certain obligations hereunder; and
- (23) any other terms of such series, including, without limitations, any restrictions on transfer related thereto all upon such terms as may be determined in or pursuant to such indenture supplemental hereto with respect to such series.

The form of the Securities of each series shall be established pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture in or pursuant to the indenture supplemental hereto creating such series. The Securities of each series shall be distinguished from the Securities of each other series in such manner, reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, as the Board of Directors may determine.

Unless otherwise provided with respect to Securities of a particular series, the Securities of any series may only be issuable in registered form, without coupons.

Any terms or provisions in respect of the Securities of any series issued under this Indenture may be determined pursuant to this Section by providing for the method by which such terms or provisions shall be determined.

**Section 3.02 Denominations.** The Securities of each series shall be issuable in such denominations and currency as shall be provided in the provisions of this Indenture or the indenture supplemental hereto creating such series. In the absence of any such provisions with respect to the Securities of any series, the Securities of that series shall be issuable only in fully registered form in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof.

21

---

**Section 3.03 Execution, Authentication and Delivery and Dating.** The Securities shall be executed on behalf of the Company by any Responsible Officer. The signature of any of these officers on the Securities may be manual or facsimile. Securities bearing the manual or facsimile signatures of individuals who were at any time the proper officers of the Company shall bind the Company, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them have ceased to hold such offices prior to the authentication and delivery of such Securities or did not hold such offices at the date of such Securities.

At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities executed by the Company to the Trustee for authentication; and the Trustee shall, upon Company Order, authenticate and deliver such Securities as in this Indenture provided and not otherwise.

Prior to any such authentication and delivery, the Trustee shall be provided with the Officers' Certificate required to be furnished to the Trustee pursuant to Section 1.02, and the Board Resolution and any certificate relating to the issuance of the series of Securities required to be furnished pursuant to Section 2.02, an Opinion of Counsel substantially to the effect that:

- (1) all instruments furnished to the Trustee conform to the requirements of the Indenture and Supplemental Indenture and all conditions precedent provided for in the Supplemental Indenture and the Indenture relating to the authentication and delivery of the Securities have been complied with;
- (2) the form and terms of such Securities have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture;
- (3) all laws and requirements with respect to the execution and delivery by the Company of such Securities have been complied with, the Company has the corporate power to issue such Securities and such Securities have been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and, assuming due authentication and delivery by the Trustee, constitute legal, valid and binding obligations of the Company enforceable in accordance with their terms (subject, as to enforcement of remedies, to applicable bankruptcy, reorganization, insolvency, moratorium or other laws and legal principles affecting creditors' rights generally from time to time in effect and to general equitable principles, whether applied in an action at law or in equity) and entitled to the benefits of this Indenture, equally and ratably with all other Securities, if any, of such series Outstanding;
- (4) when applicable, the Indenture is qualified under the Trust Indenture Act; and
- (5) such other matters as the Trustee may reasonably request;

and, if the authentication and delivery relates to a new series of Securities created by an indenture supplemental hereto, also stating that all laws and requirements with respect to the form and execution by the Company of the supplemental indenture with respect to that series of Securities have been complied with, the Company has corporate power to execute and deliver any such supplemental indenture and has taken all necessary corporate action for those purposes

22

---

and any such supplemental indenture has been duly executed and delivered and constitutes the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Company enforceable in accordance with its terms (subject, as to enforcement of remedies, to applicable bankruptcy, reorganization, insolvency, moratorium or other laws and legal principles affecting creditors' rights generally from time to time in effect and to general equitable principles, whether applied in an action at law or in equity).

The Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue thereof will adversely affect the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture.

Unless otherwise provided in the form of Security for any series, all Securities shall be dated the date of their authentication.

No Security shall be entitled to any benefit under this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose unless there appears on such Security a certificate of authentication substantially in the form provided for herein executed by the Trustee by manual or facsimile signature, and such certificate upon any Security shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that such Security has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if any Security shall have been authenticated and delivered hereunder but never issued and sold by the Company, and the Company shall deliver such Security to the Trustee for cancellation as provided in Section 3.09, for all purposes of this Indenture such Security shall be deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder and shall never be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture.

**Section 3.04 Temporary Securities.** Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and, upon receipt of the documents required by Section 3.03, together with a Company Order, the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities which are printed, lithographed, typewritten or otherwise produced, in any authorized denomination, substantially of the tenor of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued and with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as the officers executing such Securities may determine, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

If temporary Securities of any series are issued, the Company will cause definitive Securities of such series to be prepared without unreasonable delay. After the preparation of definitive Securities, the temporary Securities of such series shall be exchangeable for definitive Securities of such series upon surrender of the temporary Securities of such series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment, without charge to the Holder; and upon surrender for cancellation of any one or more temporary Securities the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a like principal amount of definitive Securities of such series of authorized denominations and of like tenor and terms. Until so exchanged the temporary Securities of such series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series.

**Section 3.05 Registration, Transfer and Exchange.** The Company shall keep or cause to be kept a register or registers (herein sometimes referred to as the “**Security Register**”) in

23

---

which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall provide for the registration of Securities, or of Securities of a particular series, and of transfers of Securities or of Securities of such series. Any such register shall be in written form or in any other form capable of being converted into written form within a reasonable time. At all reasonable times the information contained in such register or registers shall be available for inspection by the Trustee at the office or agency to be maintained by the Company as provided in Section 10.02. There shall be only one Security Register per series of Securities.

The Company initially appoints the Trustee to act as Security Registrar for the Securities on its behalf. The Company may at any time and from time to time authorize any Person to act as Security Registrar in place of the Trustee with respect to any series of Securities issued under this Indenture.

Subject to Section 2.04, upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Security of any series at the office or agency of the Company maintained for such purpose in a Place of Payment, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the name of the designated transferee or transferees, one or more new Securities of such series of any authorized denominations, of a like aggregate principal amount and Stated Maturity and of like tenor and terms.

Subject to Section 2.04, at the option of the Holder, Securities of any series may be exchanged for other Securities of such series of any authorized denominations, of a like aggregate principal amount and Stated Maturity and of like tenor and terms, upon surrender of the Securities to be exchanged at such office or agency. Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Securities which the Securityholder making the exchange is entitled to receive. All Securities issued upon any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same debt, and entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture, as the Securities surrendered upon such registration of transfer or exchange.

Every Security presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange shall (if so required by the Company or the Trustee) be duly endorsed, or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustee duly executed, by the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing.

Unless otherwise provided in the Security to be registered for transfer or exchanged, no service charge shall be made on any Securityholder for any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, but the Company may (unless otherwise provided in such Security) require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 3.04, 9.06 or 11.07 not involving any transfer. The Company shall not be required (i) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Security of any series during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the mailing of a notice of redemption of Securities of such series selected for redemption under Section 11.03 and ending at the close of business on the date of such mailing, or (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Security so selected for redemption in whole or in part.

24

---

None of the Company, the Trustee, any agent of the Trustee, any Paying Agent or the Security Registrar will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests of a Global Security or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests.

**Section 3.06 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities.** If (i) any mutilated Security is surrendered to the Trustee, or the Company and the Trustee receive evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security, and (ii) there is delivered to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them harmless, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustee that such Security has been acquired by a protected purchaser, the Company shall execute and upon its written request the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in exchange for or in lieu of any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security, a new Security of like tenor, series, Stated Maturity and principal amount, bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

In case any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, pay such Security.

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

Every new Security issued pursuant to this Section in lieu of any destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of the same series duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities.

**Section 3.07 Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved.** Unless otherwise provided with respect to such Security pursuant to Section 3.01, interest on any Security which is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date shall be paid to the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest.

Any interest on any Security which is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date (herein called “**Defaulted Interest**”) shall forthwith cease to be payable to the registered Holder on the relevant Regular Record Date by virtue of his having been such Holder; and, except as hereinafter provided, such Defaulted Interest may be paid by the Company, at its election in each case, as provided in clause (1) or clause (2) below:

- (1) The Company may elect to make payment of any Defaulted Interest to the Persons in whose names any such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities)

25

---

are registered at the close of business on a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner (the “Special Record Date”). The Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each such Security and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause (1) provided. Thereupon the Trustee shall fix a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall be not more than 15 nor less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company of such Special Record Date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor to be mailed, first class postage prepaid, to the Holder of each such Security at his address as it appears in the Security Register, not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor having been mailed as aforesaid, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered on such Special Record Date and shall no longer be payable pursuant to the following clause (2).

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause (2), such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

If any installment of interest the Stated Maturity of which is on or prior to the Redemption Date for any Security called for redemption pursuant to Article XI is not paid or duly provided for on or prior to the Redemption Date in accordance with the foregoing provisions of this Section, such interest shall be payable as part of the Redemption Price of such Securities.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section, each Security delivered under this Indenture upon registration of transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, which were carried by such other Security.

**Section 3.08 Persons Deemed Owners.** The Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the Person in whose name any Security is registered as the owner of such Security for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of (and premium, if any), and (subject to Section 3.07) interest on, such Security and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not such Security be overdue, and neither the Company, the Trustee nor any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall be affected by notice to the contrary. None of the

26

---

Company, the Trustee, any Paying Agent or the Security Registrar will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests in a Global Security or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests.

**Section 3.09 Cancellation.** All Securities surrendered for payment, redemption, registration of transfer, exchange or credit against a sinking fund shall, if surrendered to any Person other than the Trustee, be delivered to the Trustee and, if not already canceled, shall be promptly canceled by it. The Company may at any time deliver to the Trustee for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated and delivered hereunder which the Company may have acquired in any manner whatsoever, and all Securities so delivered shall be promptly canceled by the Trustee. No Security shall be authenticated in lieu of or in exchange for any Securities canceled as provided in this Section, except as expressly permitted by this Indenture. The Trustee shall dispose of all canceled Securities in accordance with its standard procedures and deliver a certificate of such disposition to the Company upon its written request therefor.

**Section 3.10 CUSIP and CINS Numbers.** The Company in issuing any Securities may use “CUSIP” and “CINS” numbers (if then generally in use) and, if so, the Trustee shall use “CUSIP” and “CINS” numbers in notices of redemption as a convenience to Securityholders; provided that any such notice may state that no representation is made as to the correctness of such numbers either as printed on such Securities or as contained in any notice of a redemption and that reliance may be placed only on the other identification numbers printed on such Securities, and any such redemption shall not be affected by any defect in or omission of such numbers in such notices of redemption.

**Section 3.11 Computation of Interest.** Unless otherwise provided as contemplated in Section 3.01, interest on the Securities shall be calculated on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

#### ARTICLE IV SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE; DEFEASANCE

**Section 4.01 Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture.** Unless pursuant to Section 3.01 provision is made that this Section shall not be applicable to the Securities of any series, this Indenture shall cease to be of further effect with respect to any series of Securities (except as to any surviving rights of registration of transfer or exchange of Securities of such series expressly provided for herein or in the form of Security for such series), and the Trustee, on receipt of a Company Request and at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture as to such series, when:

(1) either

(A) all Securities of that series theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than (i) Securities of such series which have been destroyed, lost or stolen and which have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 3.06, and (ii) Securities of such series for whose payment money in the Required Currency has theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the

27

---

Company and thereafter repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 10.03 have been delivered to the Trustee canceled or for cancellation; or

(B) all such Securities of that series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee canceled or for cancellation:

(i) have become due and payable, or

(ii) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or

(iii) are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustee in the name, and at the expense, of the Company,

and the Company, in the case of (i), (ii) or (iii) above, has irrevocably deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for the purpose an amount in the Required Currency sufficient to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee canceled or for cancellation, for principal (and premium, if any) and interest to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable), or to the Stated Maturity or Redemption Date, as the case may be;

(2) the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company with respect to the Securities of such series; and

(3) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series have been complied with.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to any series of Securities, the obligations of the Company to the Trustee with respect to that series under Section 6.07 shall survive and the obligations of the Company and the Trustee under Sections 3.05, 3.06, 4.02, 10.02 and 10.03 shall survive such satisfaction and discharge.

**Section 4.02 Application of Trust Money.** Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 10.03, all money, property and securities deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 4.01 or Section 4.03 shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the series of Securities in respect of which it was deposited and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal (and premium, if any) and interest for whose payment such money has been deposited with the Trustee; but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

28

---

Anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any money, property or securities deposited with and held by it as provided in Section 4.03 and this Section 4.02 which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, are in excess of the amount thereof which would then be required to be deposited to effect an equivalent satisfaction and discharge, Discharge (as defined below) or covenant defeasance, provided that the Trustee shall not be required to liquidate any securities in order to comply with the provisions of this paragraph.

**Section 4.03 Defeasance Upon Deposit of Funds or Government Obligations.** Unless pursuant to Section 3.01 provision is made that this Section shall not be applicable to the Securities of any series, at the Company's option, either (a) the Company and the Guarantors, if any, shall be deemed to have been Discharged (as defined below) from its obligations with respect to any series of Securities after the applicable conditions set forth below have been satisfied or (b) the Company shall cease to be under any obligation to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth in Section 10.05 and Article VIII (and any other Sections or covenants applicable to such Securities that are determined pursuant to Section 3.01 to be subject to this provision), the Guarantors, if any, shall be released from the Guarantees and clause (4) of Section 5.01 of this Indenture (and any other Events of Default applicable to such Securities that are determined pursuant to Section 3.01 to be subject to this provision) shall be deemed not to be an Event of Default with respect to any series of Securities at any time after the applicable conditions set forth below have been satisfied:

(1) the Company shall have deposited or caused to be deposited irrevocably with the Trustee as trust funds, specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of such series, (i) money in an amount, or (ii) the equivalent in securities of the government which issued the currency in which the Securities are denominated or government agencies backed by the full faith and credit of such government which through the payment of interest and principal in respect thereof in accordance with their terms will provide freely available funds on or prior to the due date of any payment, money in an amount, or (iii) a combination of (i) and (ii), sufficient, in the opinion (with respect to (ii) and (iii)) of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge each installment of principal (including mandatory sinking fund payments) and any premium of, interest on and any repurchase or redemption obligations with respect to the outstanding Securities of such series on the dates such installments of interest or principal or repurchase or redemption obligations are due (before such a deposit, if the Securities of such series are then redeemable or may be redeemed in the future pursuant to the terms thereof, in either case at the option of the Company, the Company may give to the Trustee, in accordance with Section 11.02, a notice of its election to redeem all of the Securities of such series at a future date in accordance with Article XI);

(2) no Event of Default or event (including such deposit) which with notice or lapse of time would become an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of such series shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit (other than an Event of Default resulting from the borrowing of funds to be applied to such deposit);

29

---

(3) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that Holders of the Securities of such series will not recognize income, gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of the Company's exercise of its option under this Section 4.03 and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount and in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such option had not been exercised, and, in the case of Securities being Discharged, accompanied by a ruling to that effect from the Internal Revenue Service, unless, as set forth in such Opinion of Counsel, there has been a change in the applicable Federal income tax law since the date of this Indenture such that a ruling from the Internal Revenue Service is no longer required;

(4) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate stating that the deposit referred to in paragraph (1) above was not made by the Company with the intent of preferring the Holders over other creditors of the Company or with the intent of defeating, hindering, delaying or defrauding creditors of the Company or others;

(5) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series have been complied with; and

(6) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel stating that the satisfaction and discharge of the Indenture is authorized and permitted under the Indenture and all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series have been complied with.

If the Company, at its option, with respect to a series of Securities, satisfies the applicable conditions pursuant to either clause (a) or (b) of the first sentence of this Section, then (A), in the event the Company satisfies the conditions to clause (a) and elects clause (a) to be applicable, each of the Guarantors, if any, shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by, and obligations under, its respective guarantee of the Securities of such series and to have satisfied all the



obligations under this Indenture relating to the Securities of such series and (B) in either case, each of the Guarantors, if any, shall cease to be under any obligation to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth in any covenants applicable to such Securities that are determined pursuant to Section 3.01 to be subject to this provision, and any Events of Default applicable to such series of Securities that are determined pursuant to Section 3.01 to be subject to this provision shall be deemed not to be an Event of Default with respect to such series of Securities at any time thereafter.

“**Discharged**” means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by, and obligations under, the Securities of such series and to have satisfied all the obligations under this Indenture relating to the Securities of such series (and the Trustee, on receipt of a Company Request and at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), except (A) the rights of Holders of Securities to receive, from the trust fund described in clause (1) above, payment of the principal and any premium of and any interest on such Securities when such payments are due; (B) the Company’s

30

---

obligations with respect to such Securities under Sections 3.05, 3.06, 4.02, 6.07, 10.02 and 10.03; (C) the Company’s right of redemption, if any, with respect to any Securities of such series pursuant to Article XI, in which case the Company may redeem the Securities of such series in accordance with Article XI by complying with such Article and depositing with the Trustee, in accordance with Section 11.05, an amount of money sufficient, together with all amounts held in trust pursuant to Section 4.02 with respect to Securities of such series, to pay the Redemption Price of all the Securities of such series to be redeemed; and (D) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustee hereunder. A “**Discharge**” shall mean the meeting by the Company of the foregoing requirements.

**Section 4.04 Reinstatement.** If the Trustee or Paying Agent is unable to apply any money, property or securities in accordance with Section 4.02 of this Indenture, by reason of any legal proceeding or by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, the Company’s and, if applicable, the Guarantors’ obligations under this Indenture and the Securities shall be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to Section 4.01 or 4.03 of this Indenture, as the case may be, until such time as the Trustee or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all such money, property or securities in accordance with Section 4.02 of this Indenture; provided that, if the Company has made any payment of principal of or interest on any Securities because of the reinstatement of its obligations, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights of the Holders of such Securities to receive such payment from the money, property or securities held by the Trustee or Paying Agent.

## ARTICLE V REMEDIES

**Section 5.01 Events of Default.** “Event of Default”, wherever used herein, means with respect to any series of Securities any one of the following events (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body), unless such event is either inapplicable to a particular series or it is specifically deleted or modified in or pursuant to the indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution creating such series of Securities or in the form of Security for such series:

- (1) default in the payment of any interest upon any Security of that series when it becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days; or
- (2) default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security of that series at its Maturity; or
- (3) default in the payment of any sinking or purchase fund or analogous obligation when the same becomes due by the terms of the Securities of such series; or
- (4) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or warranty of the Company in this Indenture in respect of the Securities of such series (other than a covenant or warranty in respect of the Securities of such series a default in the

31

---

performance of which or the breach of which is elsewhere in this Section specifically dealt with), all of such covenants and warranties in the Indenture which are not expressly stated to be for the benefit of a particular series of Securities being deemed in respect of the Securities of all series for this purpose, and continuance of such default or breach for a period of 90 days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustee or to the Company and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 33-1/3% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series, a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a “Notice of Default” hereunder; or

- (5) the entry of an order for relief against the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof under Title 11, United States Code (the “Federal Bankruptcy Act”) by a court having jurisdiction in the premises or a decree or order by a court having jurisdiction in the premises adjudging the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof a bankrupt or insolvent under any other applicable Federal or State law, or the entry of a decree or order approving as properly filed a petition seeking reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition of or in respect of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof under the Federal Bankruptcy Act or any other applicable Federal or State law, or appointing a receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof or of any substantial part of its property, or ordering the winding up or liquidation of its affairs, and the continuance of any such decree or order unstayed and in effect for a period of 90 consecutive days; or
- (6) the consent by the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof to the institution of bankruptcy or insolvency proceedings against it, or the filing by it of a petition or answer or consent seeking reorganization or relief under the Federal Bankruptcy Act or any other applicable Federal or State law, or the consent by it to the filing of any such petition or to the appointment of a receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof or of any substantial part of its property, or the making by it of an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or the admission by it in writing of its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due, or the taking of corporate action by the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof in furtherance of any such action; or
- (7) any other Event of Default provided in the indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution under which such series of Securities is issued or in the form of Security for such series.

**Section 5.02 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment.** If an Event of Default described in paragraph (1), (2), (3), (4) or (7) (if the Event of Default under clause (4) or (7) is with respect to less than all series of Securities then Outstanding) of Section 5.01 occurs and is continuing with respect to any series, then and in each and every such case, unless the principal of all the Securities of such series shall have already become due and payable, either the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 33-

principal amount (or, if the Securities of such series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount as may be specified in the terms of that series) of all the Securities of such series and all accrued interest thereon to be due and payable immediately, and upon any such declaration the same shall become and shall be immediately due and payable, anything in this Indenture or in the Securities of such series contained to the contrary notwithstanding. If an Event of Default described in clause (4) or (7) (if the Event of Default under clause (4) or (7) is with respect to all series of Securities then Outstanding), of Section 5.01 occurs and is continuing, then and in each and every such case, unless the principal of all the Securities shall have already become due and payable, either the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 33-1/3% in aggregate principal amount of all the Securities then Outstanding hereunder (treated as one class), by notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by Holders), may declare the principal amount (or, if any Securities are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount as may be specified in the terms thereof) of all the Securities then Outstanding and all accrued interest thereon to be due and payable immediately, and upon any such declaration the same shall become and shall be immediately due and payable, anything in this Indenture or in the Securities contained to the contrary notwithstanding. If an Event of Default of the type set forth in clause (5) or (6) of Section 5.01 occurs and is continuing, the principal of and any interest on the Securities then Outstanding shall become immediately due and payable.

At any time after such a declaration of acceleration has been made with respect to the Securities of any or all series, as the case may be, and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained by the Trustee as hereinafter in this Article provided, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if:

- (1) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay:
  - (A) all overdue installments of interest on the Securities of such series; and
  - (B) the principal of (and premium, if any, on) any Securities of such series which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration, and interest thereon at the rate or rates prescribed therefor by the terms of the Securities of such series, to the extent that payment of such interest is lawful; and
  - (C) interest upon overdue installments of interest at the rate or rates prescribed therefor by the terms of the Securities of such series to the extent that payment of such interest is lawful; and
  - (D) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustee hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel and all other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07; and

- (2) all Events of Default with respect to such series of Securities, other than the nonpayment of the principal of the Securities of such series which have become due solely by such acceleration, have been cured or waived as provided in Section 5.13.

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

**Section 5.03 Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee.** The Company covenants that if:

- (1) default is made in the payment of any installment of interest on any Security of any series when such interest becomes due and payable; or
- (2) default is made in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security at the Maturity thereof; or
- (3) default is made in the payment of any sinking or purchase fund or analogous obligation when the same becomes due by the terms of the Securities of any series;

and any such default continues for any period of grace provided with respect to the Securities of such series, the Company will, upon demand of the Trustee, pay to it, for the benefit of the Holder of any such Security (or the Holders of any such series in the case of clause (3) above), the whole amount then due and payable on any such Security (or on the Securities of any such series in the case of clause (3) above) for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, with interest, to the extent that payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable, upon the overdue principal (and premium, if any) and upon overdue installments of interest, at such rate or rates as may be prescribed therefor by the terms of any such Security (or of Securities of any such series in the case of clause (3) above); and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel and all other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07. If the Company fails to pay such amounts forthwith upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, may institute a judicial proceeding for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, and may prosecute such proceeding to judgment or final decree, and may enforce the same against the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities of such series and collect the money adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities, wherever situated.

If an Event of Default with respect to any series of Securities occurs and is continuing, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted herein, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

**Section 5.04 Trustee May File Proofs of Claim.** In case of the pendency of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, adjustment,

whether the Trustee shall have made any demand on the Company for the payment of overdue principal or interest) shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceedings or otherwise:

- (1) to file and prove a claim for the whole amount of principal (or portion thereof determined pursuant to Section 3.01(16) to be provable in bankruptcy) (and premium, if any) and interest owing and unpaid in respect of the Securities and to file such other papers or documents as may be necessary and advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee (including any claim for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel and all other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07) and of the Securityholders allowed in such judicial proceeding; and
- (2) to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same;

and any receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator, sequestrator (or other similar official) in any such judicial proceeding is hereby authorized by each Securityholder to make such payment to the Trustee and in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Securityholders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due to it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, and any other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07.

Nothing herein contained shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Securityholder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder thereof, or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Securityholder in any such proceeding.

**Section 5.05 Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities.** All rights of action and claims under this Indenture or the Securities of any series may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities of such series or the production thereof in any proceeding relating thereto, and any such proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agent and counsel and any other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities of the series in respect of which such judgment has been recovered.

**Section 5.06 Application of Money Collected.** Any money collected by the Trustee with respect to a series of Securities pursuant to this Article shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such money on account of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, upon presentation of the Securities of such series and the notation thereon of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

35

---

**FIRST:** To the payment of all amounts due the Trustee, its agents and attorneys under Section 6.07 of the Indenture and all other obligations hereunder, including payment of all compensation, expenses, liabilities incurred and all advances made by the Trustee and the costs and expenses of collection.

**SECOND:** To the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid upon the Securities of that series for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, respectively.

**THIRD:** To the Company.

**Section 5.07 Limitation on Suits.** No Holder of any Security of any series shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless:

- (1) such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series;
- (2) the Holders of not less than 33-1/3% in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of such series shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as Trustee hereunder;
- (3) such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustee indemnity and/or security reasonably satisfactory to it against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;
- (4) the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity has failed to institute any such proceeding; and
- (5) no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 60-day period by the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series;

it being understood and intended that no one or more Holders of Securities of such series shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other Holders of Securities of such series, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other such Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal and proportionate benefit of all the Holders of all Securities of such series.

**Section 5.08 Unconditional Right of Securityholders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest.** Notwithstanding any other provisions in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and (subject to Section 3.07) interest on such Security on the respective Stated Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption or repayment, on the

36

---

Redemption Date or Repayment Date, as the case may be) and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment, and such right shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

**Section 5.09 Restoration of Rights and Remedies.** If the Trustee or any Securityholder has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, then and in every such case the Company, the Trustee and the Securityholders shall, subject to any determination in such proceeding, be restored severally and respectively to their former positions hereunder, and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Securityholders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

**Section 5.10 Rights and Remedies Cumulative.** No right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Securityholders is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

**Section 5.11 Delay or Omission Not Waiver.** No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any Security to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein. Every right and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or to the Securityholders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Securityholders, as the case may be.

**Section 5.12 Control by Securityholders.** The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series, provided that:

- (1) the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction if the Trustee, being advised by counsel, determines that the action so directed may not lawfully be taken or would conflict with this Indenture or if the Trustee in good faith shall, by a Responsible Officer, determine that the proceedings so directed would involve it in personal liability or be unjustly prejudicial to the Holders not taking part in such direction, and
- (2) the Trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustee which is not inconsistent with such direction.

**Section 5.13 Waiver of Past Defaults.** The Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such series waive any past default hereunder with respect to such series and its consequences, except a default not theretofore cured:

37

---

- (1) in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security of such series, or in the payment of any sinking or purchase fund or analogous obligation with respect to the Securities of such series, or
- (2) in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which under Article IX cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such series.

Upon any such waiver, such default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereon.

**Section 5.14 Undertaking for Costs.** All parties to this Indenture agree, and each Holder of any Security by his acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; but the provisions of this Section shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Trustee, to any suit instituted by any Securityholder, or group of Securityholders, holding in the aggregate more than 10% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series to which the suit relates, or to any suit instituted by any Securityholder for the enforcement of the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on an Security on or after the respective Stated Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption or repayment, on or after the Redemption Date or Repayment Date, as the case may be).

**Section 5.15 Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws.** The Company covenants (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) that it will not at any time insist upon, or plead, or in any manner whatsoever claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any stay or extension law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force, which may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture; and the Company (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) hereby expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law, and covenants that it will not hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustee, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law had been enacted.

## ARTICLE VI THE TRUSTEE

### Section 6.01 Certain Duties and Responsibilities.

(a) Except during the continuance of an Event of Default with respect to any series of Securities:

(1) the Trustee undertakes to perform such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

38

---

(2) in the absence of bad faith on its part, the Trustee may, with respect to Securities of such series, conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions which by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture (but need not confirm or investigate the accuracy of mathematical calculations or other facts stated therein).

(b) In case an Event of Default with respect to any series of Securities has occurred and is continuing, the Trustee shall exercise with respect to the Securities of such series such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture and any indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution relating to such series of Securities, and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent man would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his own affairs.

(c) No provision of this Indenture shall be construed to relieve the Trustee from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act, or its own willful misconduct, except that:

- (1) this Subsection shall not be construed to limit the effect of Subsection (a) of this Section;

(2) the Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts;

(3) the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in accordance with the direction of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee, under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series; and

(4) no provision of this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur any financial liability in the performance of any of its duties hereunder, or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, if it shall have reasonable grounds for believing that repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity and/or security against such risk or liability is not reasonably assured to it.

(d) Whether or not therein expressly so provided, every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct or affecting the liability of or affording protection to the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of this Section.

#### **Section 6.02 Notice of Defaults.**

39

---

If a default occurs and is continuing with respect to the Securities of any series and if it is known to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, the Trustee shall transmit by mail to all Securityholders of such series, as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register, notice of all defaults hereunder within 90 days after it occurs or, if later, after a Responsible Officer of the Trustee has knowledge of such default, unless such default shall have been cured or waived; provided, however, that, except in the case of a default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security of such series or in the payment of any sinking or purchase fund installment or analogous obligation with respect to Securities of such series, the Trustee shall be protected in withholding such notice if and so long as the board of directors, the executive committee or a trust committee of directors and/or Responsible Officers of the Trustee in good faith determine that the withholding of such notice is in the interests of the Securityholders of such series; and provided, further, that in the case of any default of the character specified in Section 5.01(4) with respect to Securities of such series no such notice to Securityholders of such series shall be given until at least 90 days after the occurrence thereof. For the purpose of this Section, the term "default", with respect to Securities of any series, means any event which is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series.

#### **Section 6.03 Certain Rights of Trustee.** Except as otherwise provided in Section 6.01:

(a) the Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be fully protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any advice of counsel, resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;

(b) any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or Company Order and any resolution of the Board of Directors may be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution;

(c) whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, the Trustee (unless other evidence be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of bad faith on its part, rely upon an Officers' Certificate;

(d) the Trustee may consult with counsel and the written advice of such counsel or an Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon;

(e) the Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights, trusts or powers vested in it by this Indenture, and may refuse to perform any duty or exercise any such rights or powers, including but not limited to acting at the request or direction of any of the Securityholders pursuant to this Indenture, unless such Securityholders shall have offered to the Trustee security and/or indemnity reasonably satisfactory to it against the costs, expenses and liabilities which might be incurred by it in compliance with such request or direction or which, in the opinion of the Trustee, adversely affects the

40

---

Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture, the Securities or otherwise;

(f) the Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture or other paper or document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as it may see fit, and, if the Trustee shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, it shall be entitled to examine the books, records and premises of the Company, personally or by agent or attorney;

(g) the Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder;

(h) the Trustee shall not be charged with knowledge of any default (as defined in Section 6.02) or Event of Default with respect to the Securities of any series for which it is acting as Trustee unless a Responsible Officer of the Trustee assigned to the Corporate Trust Department of the Trustee (or any successor division or department of the Trustee) has received written notice of such default or Event of Default from the Company or any other obligor on such Securities or from any Holder of such Securities, and such notice references the Securities generally or the Securities of a particular series and this Indenture;

(i) the Trustee shall not be liable for any failure or delay in the performance of its obligations under this Indenture because of circumstances beyond its control, including, but not limited to, acts of God, flood, war (whether declared or undeclared), terrorism, fire, riot, strikes or work stoppages for any reason, embargo, government action, including any laws, ordinances, regulations or the like which restrict or prohibit the providing of the services contemplated by this Indenture, inability to obtain material, equipment, or communications or computer facilities, the failure of equipment or interruption of communications or computer facilities, or the unavailability of the Federal Reserve Bank, and other causes beyond its control whether or not of the same class or kind as specifically named above;

(j) the Trustee shall not be liable under or in connection with this Indenture for indirect, special, incidental, punitive or consequential losses or damages of any kind whatsoever, including but not limited to lost profits, whether or not foreseeable, even if the Trustee has been advised of the possibility thereof and

regardless of the form of action in which such damages are sought;

(k) the Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it in good faith and believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture;

41

---

(l) in determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying upon any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver from the Holders, only Securities which a Responsible Officer assigned to the Corporate Trust Department of the Trustee knows to be owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or such other obligor shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned which have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right to act as owner with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or such other obligor;

(m) the Trustee will accept all notices, reports and other information that are required to be provided or delivered to it pursuant to the Indenture, and, where required hereunder, will determine whether such notices, reports or other information are satisfactory to it in form; provided however that delivery of such reports, information and documents to the Trustee is for informational purposes only and, except for any explicit notice of an Event of Default from the Company or a Securityholder, the Trustee's receipt of such shall not constitute actual or constructive knowledge or notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Company's compliance with any of its covenants hereunder;

(n) the Trustee may request that the Company deliver an Officer's Certificate setting forth the names of individuals and/or titles of officers authorized at such time to take specified actions pursuant to this Indenture, which Officer's Certificate may be signed by any Person authorized to sign an Officer's Certificate, including any Person specified as so authorized in any such certificate previously delivered and not superseded;

(o) the rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder including but not limited to its capacity as Paying Agent, Security Registrar and Conversion Agent, and each agent, custodian and other Person employed to act hereunder; and

(p) the Trustee may act at the direction of the requisite percentage of Securityholders set forth in this Indenture or any Supplemental Indenture in full reliance on such direction and without any liability for acting in accordance with such direction.

**Section 6.04 Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities.** The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except the certificates of authentication, shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and the Trustee assumes no responsibility for their correctness. The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities. The Trustee shall not be accountable for the use or application by the Company of Securities or the proceeds thereof. The Trustee shall not be responsible or liable for any failure of the Company or any other party to comply with any securities laws, including, without limitation, the U.S. Securities Act of 1933, as amended and the U.S. Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended.

42

---

**Section 6.05 May Hold Securities.** The Trustee, any Authenticating Agent, any Paying Agent, the Security Registrar or any other agent of the Company, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and, subject to Sections 6.08 and 6.13, may otherwise deal with the Company or any Guarantor, if applicable, with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, Authenticating Agent, Paying Agent, Security Registrar or such other agent.

**Section 6.06 Money Held in Trust.** Subject to the provisions of Section 10.03 hereof, all moneys in any currency or currency received by the Trustee shall, until used or applied as herein provided, be held in trust for the purposes for which they were received, but need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any money received by it hereunder except as otherwise agreed in writing with the Company.

**Section 6.07 Compensation and Reimbursement .** The Company agrees:

(1) to pay to the Trustee from time to time reasonable compensation for all services rendered by it hereunder (which compensation shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust);

(2) to reimburse the Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its agents and counsel), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as shall be determined to have been caused by its own negligence or bad faith; and

(3) to indemnify and hold harmless the Trustee and each of its affiliates and their officers, directors, employees, representatives and agents (each, an "Indemnified Party") from and against any and all claims, damages, losses, liabilities and expenses (including, without limitation, reasonable fees and expenses of counsel) that may be incurred by or asserted or awarded against any Indemnified Party and arise in any way out of or in connection with or by reason of this Indenture or any of the transactions contemplated herein, including the enforcement of their rights and defending itself under this Indenture, except to the extent such claim, damage, loss, liability or expense resulted from such Indemnified Party's negligence or willful misconduct. In the case of an investigation, litigation or other proceeding to which the indemnity in this Section 6.07 applies, such indemnity shall be effective (i) whether or not such investigation, litigation or proceeding is brought by the Company, its directors, shareholders or creditors, any Indemnified Party, (ii) whether or not any other person or an Indemnified Party is otherwise a party thereto and (iii) whether or not the transactions contemplated hereby are consummated.

If the indemnification provided for in the preceding paragraph is invalid or unenforceable in accordance with its terms, then the Company shall contribute to the amount paid or payable by the Trustee as a result of such liability in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative

43

---

benefits received by the Company on one hand and the Trustee on the other from the transactions relating to the Indenture.

The term "liability", as used herein, shall mean any losses, claims, damages, expenses (including without limitation the Trustee's reasonable and documented costs and expenses in defending itself against any losses, claims or investigations of any nature whatsoever or in bringing an action) or other liabilities, joint or several, arising out of or

in connection with any claim, litigation, investigation or proceeding relating to the Indenture and any transactions contemplated thereby (including, without limitation, any claim, litigation, investigation or proceeding asserting violation of applicable laws).

As security for the performance of the obligations of the Company under this Section and the Indenture the Trustee shall have a lien prior to the Securities upon all property and funds held or collected by the Trustee as such, except funds held in trust for the payment of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on particular Securities.

When the Trustee incurs expenses or renders services in connection with an Event of Default specified in Section 5.01(5) or (6), the expenses and the compensation for the services are intended to constitute expenses of administration under any bankruptcy law.

The Company's obligations under this Section 6.07 and any lien arising hereunder shall survive the resignation or removal of any Trustee, the discharge of the Company's obligations pursuant to Article IV of this Indenture and/or the termination of this Indenture.

**Section 6.08 Disqualification; Conflicting Interests.** The Trustee for the Securities of any series issued hereunder shall be subject to the provisions of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act during the period of time provided for therein. In determining whether the Trustee has a conflicting interest as defined in Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act with respect to the Securities of any series, there shall be excluded this Indenture with respect to Securities of any particular series of Securities other than that series. Nothing herein shall prevent the Trustee from filing with the Commission the application referred to in the second to last paragraph of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act.

**Section 6.09 Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility.** There shall at all times be a Trustee hereunder with respect to each series of Securities, which shall be either:

- (i) a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America or of any State, authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers and subject to supervision or examination by Federal or State authority, or
- (ii) a corporation or other Person organized and doing business under the laws of a foreign government that is permitted to act as Trustee pursuant to a rule, regulation or order of the Commission, authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers, and subject to supervision or examination by authority of such foreign government or a political subdivision thereof substantially equivalent to supervision or examination applicable to United States institutional trustees;

44

---

in either case having a combined capital and surplus of at least \$50,000,000. If such corporation publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of the aforesaid supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such corporation shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. Neither the Company nor any Person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with the Company shall serve as trustee for the Securities of any series issued hereunder. If at any time the Trustee with respect to any series of Securities shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in Section 6.10.

**Section 6.10 Resignation and Removal.**

(a) No resignation or removal of the Trustee and no appointment of a successor Trustee pursuant to this Article shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee under Section 6.11.

(b) The Trustee may resign with respect to any series of Securities at any time by giving written notice thereof to the Company. If an instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee shall not have been delivered to the Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee.

(c) The Trustee may be removed with respect to any series of Securities at any time by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of that series, delivered to the Trustee and to the Company. If an instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee shall not have been delivered to the Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of removal, the removed Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee.

(d) If at any time:

- (1) the Trustee shall fail to comply with Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act pursuant to Section 6.08 with respect to any series of Securities after written request therefor by the Company or by any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of that series for at least six months, unless the Trustee's duty to resign is stayed in accordance with the provisions of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act, or
- (2) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible under Section 6.09 with respect to any series of Securities and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any such Securityholder, or
- (3) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting with respect to any series of Securities, or
- (4) the Trustee shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or any public officer shall take charge

45

---

or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation, then, in any such case, (i) the Company by a Board Resolution may remove the Trustee, with respect to the series, or in the case of clause (4), with respect to all series, or (ii) subject to Section 5.14, any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee and the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the series, or, in the case of clause (4), with respect to all series.

(e) If the Trustee shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting with respect to any series of Securities, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of the Trustee with respect to any series of Securities for any cause, the Company, by Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee for that series of Securities.

If, within one year after such resignation, removal or incapacity, or the occurrence of such vacancy, a successor Trustee with respect to such series of Securities shall be appointed by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series delivered to the Company and the retiring Trustee, the successor Trustee so appointed shall, forthwith upon its acceptance of such appointment, become the successor Trustee with respect to such series and supersede the successor Trustee appointed by the Company with respect to such series. If no successor Trustee with respect to such series shall have been so appointed by the Company or the Securityholders of such series and accepted appointment in the manner hereinafter provided, subject to Section 5.14, any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of that series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to such series.

(f) The Company shall give notice of each resignation and each removal of the Trustee with respect to any series and each appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to any series by mailing written notice of such event by first-class mail, postage prepaid, to the Holders of Securities of that series as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register. Each notice shall include the name of the successor Trustee and the address of its principal Corporate Trust Office.

**Section 6.11 Acceptance of Appointment by Successor.** Every successor Trustee appointed hereunder shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the predecessor Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the predecessor Trustee shall become effective with respect to any series as to which it is resigning or being removed as Trustee, and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the predecessor Trustee with respect to any such series; but, on request of the Company or the successor Trustee, such predecessor Trustee shall, upon payment of its reasonable charges, if any, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all the rights, powers and trusts of the predecessor Trustee, and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such predecessor trustee hereunder with respect to all or any such series, subject nevertheless to its lien, if any, provided for in Section 6.07. Upon request of any such successor Trustee, the Company shall execute any and all

46

---

instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all such rights, powers and trusts. In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the predecessor Trustee and each successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any applicable series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto which shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the predecessor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series as to which the predecessor Trustee is not being succeeded shall continue to be vested in the predecessor Trustee, and shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such indenture supplemental hereto shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust and that each such Trustee shall be Trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee.

No successor Trustee with respect to any series of Securities shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor Trustee shall be qualified and eligible with respect to that series under this Article. The obligations of the Company to the predecessor Trustee shall survive its resignation or removal.

**Section 6.12 Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business.** Any corporation into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all of the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided such corporation shall be otherwise qualified and eligible under this Article, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities.

**Section 6.13 Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company.** The Trustee shall comply with TIA Section 311(a), excluding any creditor relationship listed in TIA Section 311(b). A Trustee who has resigned or been removed shall be subject to TIA Section 311(a) to the extent indicated.

**Section 6.14 Electronic Communication.** The Trustee agrees to accept and act upon instructions or directions pursuant to this Indenture sent by unsecured e-mail, pdf, facsimile transmission or other similar unsecured electronic methods, provided, however, that the Trustee shall have received an incumbency certificate listing persons designated to give such instructions or directions and containing specimen signatures of such designated persons, which such incumbency certificate shall be amended and replaced whenever a person is to be added or deleted from the listing. If a Person elects to give the Trustee e-mail or facsimile instructions (or instructions by a similar electronic method) and the Trustee in its discretion elects to act upon such instructions, the Trustee's understanding of such instructions shall be deemed controlling. The Trustee shall not be liable for any losses, costs or expenses arising directly or indirectly from the Trustee's reliance upon and compliance with such instructions notwithstanding such

47

---

instructions conflict or are inconsistent with a subsequent written instruction. Any Person that gives the Trustee e-mail or facsimile instructions agrees to assume all risks arising out of the use of such electronic methods to submit instructions and directions to the Trustee, including without limitation the risk of the Trustee acting on unauthorized instructions, and the risk of interception and misuse by third parties.

**Section 6.15 Appointment of Authenticating Agent.** At any time when any of the Securities remain Outstanding the Trustee may appoint an Authenticating Agent or Agents with respect to one or more series of Securities which shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon original issuance, exchange, registration of transfer or partial redemption thereof or pursuant to Section 3.06, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. Wherever reference is made in this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of Securities by the Trustee or the Trustee's certificate of authentication, such reference shall be deemed to include authentication and delivery on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent and a certificate of authentication executed on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent. Each Authenticating Agent shall at all times be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America, any State thereof or the District of Columbia, authorized under such laws to act as an Authenticating Agent, having a combined capital and surplus of not less than \$50,000,000 and, if other than the Company itself, subject to supervision or examination by Federal or State authority. If such Authenticating Agent publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of said supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such Authenticating Agent shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time an Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, such Authenticating Agent shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in this Section.

Any corporation into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall continue to be an Authenticating Agent, provided such corporation shall be otherwise eligible under this Section, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of the Trustee or the Authenticating Agent.



An Authenticating Agent may resign at any time by giving written notice thereof to the Trustee and, if other than the Company, to the Company. The Trustee may at any time terminate the agency of an Authenticating Agent by giving written notice thereof to such Authenticating Agent and, if other than the Company, to the Company. Upon receiving such a notice of resignation or upon such a termination, or in case at any time such Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee, with the approval of the Company, may appoint a successor Authenticating Agent which shall be acceptable to the Company and shall mail written notice of such appointment by first-class mail, postage prepaid, to all Holders of Securities of the series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent will serve, as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register.

Any successor Authenticating Agent upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent. No successor Authenticating Agent shall be appointed unless eligible under the provisions of this Section.

The Company agrees to pay to each Authenticating Agent from time to time reasonable compensation for its services under this Section. If an appointment with respect to one or more series is made pursuant to this Section, the Securities of such series may have endorsed thereon, in addition to the Trustee's certificate of authentication, an alternate certificate of authentication in the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

[Name of Authenticating Agent]

\_\_\_\_\_

by

As Authenticating Agent

\_\_\_\_\_

by

As Authorized Agent

\_\_\_\_\_

Dated \_\_\_\_\_

**Section 6.16 Withholding.** In order to comply with applicable tax laws (inclusive of rules, regulations and interpretations promulgated by competent authorities) related to the Indenture in effect from time to time ("Applicable Law") that a foreign financial institution, the Company, Trustee, Paying Agent or other party is or has agreed to be subject to, the Company agrees (i) to provide to the Trustee and the Paying Agent sufficient information about the parties and/or transactions (including any modification to the terms of such transactions) so the Trustee and Paying Agent can determine whether it has tax related obligations under Applicable Law, (ii) that the Trustee and the Paying Agent shall be entitled to make any withholding or deduction from payments or deemed payments to the extent necessary to comply with Applicable Law for which the Trustee and the Paying Agent shall not have any liability, and (iii) to hold the Trustee and the Paying Agent harmless for any losses it may suffer due to the actions it takes to comply with Applicable Law. In addition, the Company, the Trustee and the Paying Agent shall be entitled to set off any withholding tax obligations with respect to any deemed distributions that do not otherwise give rise to payments against cash payments of interest or from cash or common shares otherwise deliverable to a Securityholder as directed by the Company in an Officer's Certificate. The terms of this section shall survive the termination of this Indenture.

**Section 6.17 Appointment of Paying Agent.** The Company initially authorizes the Trustee to act as Paying Agent for the Securities on its behalf. The Company may at any time and from time to time authorize one or more Persons to act as Paying Agent in addition to or in place of the Trustee with respect to any series of Securities issued under this Indenture.

**Section 6.18 Trustee's Disclaimer.** The Trustee makes no representation as to the validity, priority or adequacy of this Indenture or the Securities; it shall not be accountable for the the Company's use of the proceeds from the Securities; and it shall not be responsible for any statement in the Securities other than its certificate of authentication.

**ARTICLE VII  
SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY  
TRUSTEE AND COMPANY**

**Section 7.01 Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Securityholders.** The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee:

- (1) semi-annually, not more than 15 days after December 15 and June 15 in each year in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, a list of the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities of each series as of such December 15 and June 15, as applicable, and
- (2) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing, within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished; provided, however, that if and so long as the Trustee shall be the Security Registrar for Securities of a series, no such list need be furnished with respect to such series of Securities.

**Section 7.02 Preservation of Information; Communications to Securityholders.**

- (a) The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, the names and addresses of Holders of Securities contained in the most recent list furnished to the Trustee as provided in Section 7.01 and the names and addresses of Holders of Securities received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar, if so acting. The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in Section 7.01 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

(b) If three or more Holders of Securities of any series (hereinafter referred to as “applicants”) apply in writing to the Trustee, and furnish to the Trustee reasonable proof that each such applicant has owned a Security of such series for a period of at least six months preceding the date of such application, and such application states that the applicants desire to communicate with other Holders of Securities of such series or with the Holders of all Securities with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under such Securities and is accompanied by a copy of the form of proxy or other communication which such applicants propose to transmit, then the Trustee shall, within five Business Days after the receipt of such application, at its election, either:

50

(1) afford such applicants access to the information preserved at the time by the Trustee in accordance with Section 7.02(a), or

(2) inform such applicants as to the approximate number of Holders of Securities of such series or all Securities, as the case may be, whose names and addresses appear in the information preserved at the time by the Trustee in accordance with Section 7.02(a), and as to the approximate cost of mailing to such Securityholders the form of proxy or other communication, if any, specified in such application.

If the Trustee shall elect not to afford such applicants access to such information, the Trustee shall, upon the written request of such applicants, mail to each Holder of a Security of such series or to all Securityholders, as the case may be, whose names and addresses appear in the information preserved at the time by the Trustee in accordance with Section 7.02(a), a copy of the form of proxy or other communication which is specified in such request, with reasonable promptness after a tender to the Trustee of the material to be mailed and of payment, or provision for the payment, of the reasonable expenses of mailing, unless, within five days after such tender, the Trustee shall mail to such applicants and file with the Commission, together with a copy of the material to be mailed, a written statement to the effect that, in the opinion of the Trustee, such mailing would be contrary to the best interests of the Holders of Securities of such series or all Securityholders, as the case may be, or would be in violation of applicable law. Such written statement shall specify the basis of such opinion. If the Commission, after opportunity for a hearing upon the objections specified in the written statement so filed, shall enter an order refusing to sustain any of such objections or if, after the entry of an order sustaining one or more of such objections, the Commission shall find, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that all the objections so sustained have been met and shall enter an order so declaring, the Trustee shall mail copies of such material to all Securityholders of such series or all Securityholders, as the case may be, with reasonable promptness after the entry of such order and the renewal of such tender; otherwise the Trustee shall be relieved of any obligation or duty to such applicants respecting their application.

(c) Every Holder of Securities, by receiving and holding the same, agrees with the Company and the Trustee that neither the Company nor the Trustee shall be held accountable by reason of the disclosure of any such information as to the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities in accordance with Section 7.02(b), regardless of the source from which such information was derived, and that the Trustee shall not be held accountable by reason of mailing any material pursuant to a request made under Section 7.02(b).

#### **Section 7.03 Reports by Trustee.**

(a) Within 60 days after May 15 of each year commencing with the first May 15 after the issuance of Securities, the Trustee shall transmit by mail, at the Company’s expense, to all Holders as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register, as provided in Trust Indenture Act 313(c), a brief report dated as of May 15 in accordance with and with respect to the matters required by Trust Indenture Act Section 313(a).

51

(b) The Trustee shall transmit by mail, at the Company’s expense, to all Holders as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register, as provided in Trust Indenture Act 313(c), a brief report in accordance with and with respect to the matters required by Trust Indenture Act Section 313(b).

(c) A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Holders, be furnished to the Company and, in accordance with Trust Indenture Act Section 313(d), be filed by the Trustee with each stock exchange upon which the Securities are listed, and also with the Commission.

**Section 7.04 Reports by Company.** The Company shall file with the Trustee, and transmit to Holders, such information, documents and other reports, and such summaries thereof, as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant to such Act; provided that any such information, documents or reports required to be filed with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 shall be filed with the Trustee within 15 days after the same is so required to be filed with the Commission. The Company also shall comply with the other provisions of Trust Indenture Act Section 314(a). Delivery of such reports, information and documents to the Trustee is for informational purposes only and the Trustee’s receipt of such shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Company’s compliance with any of its covenants hereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on Officers’ Certificates).

### **ARTICLE VIII CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE OR TRANSFER**

**Section 8.01 Consolidation, Merger, Conveyance or Transfer on Certain Terms.** Except as otherwise set forth in an indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution creating such series of Securities or in the form of security for such Series, the Company shall not consolidate with or merge into any other Person or convey or transfer its properties and assets substantially as an entirety to any Person, unless:

(1) the Person formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or the Person which acquires by conveyance or transfer the properties and assets of the Company substantially as an entirety shall be organized and existing under the laws of the United States of America or any State thereof or the District of Columbia, and shall expressly assume, by an indenture supplemental hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustee, in form reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on all the Securities and the performance of every covenant of this Indenture (as supplemented from time to time) on the part of the Company to be performed or observed;

(2) immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Event of Default, and no event which, after notice or lapse of time, or both, would become an Event of Default, shall have happened and be continuing; and

52

(3) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers’ Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel each stating that such consolidation, merger, conveyance or transfer and such indenture supplemental hereto comply with this Article and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such

transaction have been complied with.

**Section 8.02 Successor Person Substituted.** Upon any consolidation or merger, or any conveyance or transfer of the properties and assets of the Company substantially as an entirety in accordance with Section 8.01, the successor Person formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or to which such conveyance or transfer is made shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor had been named as the Company herein. In the event of any such conveyance or transfer, the Company as the predecessor shall be discharged from all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities and may be dissolved, wound up or liquidated at any time thereafter.

## ARTICLE IX SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

**Section 9.01 Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Securityholders.** Except as otherwise set forth in an indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution creating such series of Securities or in the form of Security for such series, without the consent of the Holders of any Securities, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee, at any time and from time to time, may enter into one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in form reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, for any of the following purposes:

- (1) to evidence the succession of another corporation or Person to the Company or any Guarantor, if any, and the assumption by any such successor of the respective covenants of the Company or any Guarantor herein and in the Securities contained; or
- (2) to add to the covenants of the Company or any Guarantor, if any, or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company or any Guarantor, for the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of any or all series (and if such covenants or the surrender of such right or power are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants are expressly being included or such surrenders are expressly being made solely for the benefit of one or more specified series); or
- (3) to cure any ambiguity, to correct or supplement any provision herein which may be inconsistent with any other provision herein, or to make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Indenture; or
- (4) to add to this Indenture such provisions as may be expressly permitted by the TIA, excluding, however, the provisions referred to in Section 316(a) (2) of the TIA as in effect at the date as of which this instrument was executed or any corresponding provision in any similar federal statute hereafter enacted; or

53

---

- (5) to establish any form of Security, as provided in Article II, to provide for the issuance of any series of Securities as provided in Article III and to set forth the terms thereof, and/or to add to the rights of the Holders of the Securities of any series; or
- (6) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment by another corporation as a successor Trustee hereunder with respect to one or more series of Securities and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, pursuant to Section 6.11; or
- (7) to add any additional Events of Default in respect of the Securities of any or all series (and if such additional Events of Default are to be in respect of less than all series of Securities, stating that such Events of Default are expressly being included solely for the benefit of one or more specified series); or
- (8) to provide for uncertificated Securities in addition to or in place of certificated Securities and to provide for bearer Securities; provided that uncertificated Securities are issued in registered form for purposes of Section 163(f) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or in a manner such that the uncertificated Securities are described in Section 163(f)(2)(B) of such Internal Revenue Code; or
- (9) to provide for the terms and conditions of conversion into Common Stock or other Marketable Securities of the Securities of any series which are convertible into Common Stock or other Marketable Securities, if any; or
- (10) to secure the Securities of any series; or
- (11) to add Guarantees in respect of any series or all of the Securities; or
- (12) to make any other change that does not adversely affect the rights of the Holders of any or all series of Securities; or
- (13) to make any change necessary to comply with any requirement of the Commission in connection with the qualification of this Indenture or any supplemental indenture under the Trust Indenture Act.

No supplemental indenture for the purposes identified in clauses (2), (3) or (5) above may be entered into if to do so would adversely affect the rights of the Holders of Outstanding Securities of any series in any material respect.

**Section 9.02 Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Securityholders.** Except as otherwise set forth in an indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution creating such series of Securities or in the form of security for such Series, with the consent of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of all series affected by such supplemental indenture or indentures (acting as one class), by Act of said Holders delivered to the Company and the Trustee (in accordance with Section 1.04 hereof), the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or

54

---

eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of the Securities of each such series under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby:

- (1) change the Maturity of the principal of, or the Stated Maturity of any premium on, or any installment of interest on, any Security, or reduce the principal amount thereof or the interest or any premium thereon, or change the method of computing the amount of principal thereof or interest thereon on any date or change any Place of Payment where, or the coin or currency in which, any Security or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after the Maturity or the Stated Maturity, as the case may be, thereof (or, in the case of redemption or repayment, on or

after the Redemption Date or the Repayment Date, as the case may be), or alter the provisions of this Indenture so as to affect adversely the terms, if any, of conversion of any Securities into Common Stock or other securities; or

- (2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver of compliance with certain provisions of this Indenture or certain defaults hereunder and their consequences, provided for in this Indenture; or
- (3) modify any of the provisions of this Section 9.02, Section 5.13 or Section 10.06, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby; or
- (4) impair or adversely affect the right of any Holder to institute suit for the enforcement of any payment on, or with respect to, the Securities of any series on or after the Stated Maturity of such Securities (or in the case of redemption, on or after the Redemption Date);
- (5) amend or modify Section 13.01 of this Indenture in any manner adverse to the rights of the Holders of the Outstanding Securities of any series; or
- (6) amend or modify Article XII with respect to the subordination of the Securities of any Series in a manner adverse in any material respect to the Holders of any Outstanding Securities of any series.

For purposes of this Section 9.02, if the Securities of any series are issuable upon the exercise of warrants, each holder of an unexercised and unexpired warrant with respect to such series shall be deemed to be a Holder of Outstanding Securities of such series in the amount issuable upon the exercise of such warrant. For such purposes, the ownership of any such warrant shall be determined by the Company in a manner consistent with customary commercial practices. The Trustee for such series shall be entitled to rely on an Officers' Certificate as to the principal amount of Securities of such series in respect of which consents shall have been

executed by holders of such warrants. A supplemental indenture which changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which has expressly been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular series of Securities, or which modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of Holders of Securities of any other series.

It shall not be necessary for any Act of Securityholders under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such Act shall approve the substance thereof.

**Section 9.03 Subordination Unimpaired.** This Indenture may not be amended at any time to alter the subordination, as provided herein, of any of the Securities then Outstanding without the written consent of the requisite holders of each series of debt securities representing Senior Indebtedness (as determined in accordance with terms of the instrument governing such Senior Indebtedness) then outstanding that would be adversely affected thereby.

**Section 9.04 Execution of Supplemental Indentures.** In executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article or the modifications thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 6.01) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture that all conditions precedent to the execution of such supplemental indenture by the Trustee provided for in the Indenture have been complied with and that upon execution such supplemental indenture will be the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Company subject to customary exceptions. The Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such supplemental indenture which affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

**Section 9.05 Effect of Supplemental Indentures.** Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture under this Article, this Indenture shall be modified in accordance therewith, and such supplemental indenture shall form a part of this Indenture for all purposes; and every Holder of Securities theretofore or thereafter authenticated and delivered hereunder shall be bound thereby to the extent provided therein.

**Section 9.06 Conformity with Trust Indenture Act.** Every supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article shall conform to the requirements of TIA as then in effect.

**Section 9.07 Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures.** Securities authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this Article may, and shall if required by the Trustee, bear a notation in form approved by the Trustee as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Trustee and the Board of Directors, to any such supplemental indenture may be prepared and executed by the Company and authenticated and delivered by the Trustee in exchange for Outstanding Securities.

**Section 9.08 Notice of Supplemental Indentures.** Promptly after the execution by the Company, any affected Guarantor and the Trustee of any Supplemental Indenture pursuant to the

provisions of Section 9.02, the Company shall give notice thereof to the Securityholders of each Outstanding Security affected, in the manner provided for in Section 1.06, setting forth in general terms the substance of such Supplemental Indenture. Any failure by the Company to mail such notice, or any defect therein, shall not, however, in any way impair or affect the validity of any such amendment or waiver.

**Section 9.09 Revocation and Effect of Consents, Waivers and Actions.** Until an amendment, waiver or other action by Securityholders becomes effective, a consent to it or any other action by a Securityholder of any series hereunder is a continuing consent by such Securityholder and every subsequent Securityholder of that Security, even if notation of the consent, waiver or action is not made on such Security. However, any such Securityholder or subsequent Securityholder may revoke the consent, waiver or action as to such Securityholder's Security if the Trustee receives the notice of revocation before the consent of the requisite aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series affected then outstanding has been obtained and not revoked. After an amendment, waiver or action becomes effective, it shall bind every Securityholder of the affected series, except as provided in Section 9.02.

The Company may, but shall not be obligated to, fix a record date for the purpose of determining the Securityholders entitled to consent to any amendment or waiver. If a record date is fixed, then, notwithstanding the first two sentences of the immediately preceding paragraph, those persons who were Securityholders at such record date (or their duly designated proxies), and only those persons, shall be entitled to consent to such amendment, supplement or waiver or to revoke any consent previously given, whether or not such persons continue to be Securityholders after such record date. No such consent shall be valid or effective for more than 90 days after such record date.

**ARTICLE X  
COVENANTS**

**Section 10.01 Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest.** With respect to each series of Securities, the Company will duly and punctually pay the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on such Securities in accordance with their terms and this Indenture, and will duly comply with all the other terms, agreements and conditions contained in, or made in the Indenture for the benefit of, the Securities of such series.

**Section 10.02 Maintenance of Office or Agency.** The Company will maintain an office or agency in each Place of Payment where Securities may be presented or surrendered for payment, where Securities may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange, where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities and this Indenture may be served and where any Securities with conversion privileges, if any, may be presented and surrendered for conversion. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and of any change in the location, of such office or agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain such office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee its agent to receive all such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

57

---

Unless otherwise set forth in, or pursuant to, a Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto with respect to a series of Securities, the Company hereby initially designates as the Place of Payment for each series of Securities, the Borough of Manhattan, the City and State of New York, and initially appoints the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office as the Company's office or agency for each such purpose in such city.

**Section 10.03 Money for Security Payments to Be Held in Trust.** If the Company shall at any time act as its own Paying Agent for any series of Securities, it will, on or before each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on, any of the Securities of such series, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum sufficient to pay the principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided, and will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure to act. Whenever the Company shall have one or more Paying Agents for any series of Securities, it will, on or prior to each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on, any Securities of such series, deposit with a Paying Agent a sum sufficient to pay the principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such principal (and premium, if any) or interest, and (unless such Paying Agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

The Company will cause each Paying Agent other than the Trustee for any series of Securities to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such Paying Agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section, that such Paying Agent will:

- (1) hold all sums held by it for the payment of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on Securities of such series in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided;
- (2) give the Trustee notice of any default by the Company (or any other obligor upon the Securities of such series) in the making of any such payment of principal (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of such series; and
- (3) at any time during the continuance of any such default, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums so held in trust by such Paying Agent.

The Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to any series of Securities or for any other purpose, pay, or by Company Order direct any Paying Agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such Paying Agent in respect of each and every series of Securities as to which it seeks to discharge this Indenture or, if for any other purpose, all sums so held in trust by the Company in respect of all Securities, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same trusts as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such Paying Agent; and, upon such payment by any Paying Agent to the Trustee, such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such money.

58

---

Any money deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Security of any series and remaining unclaimed for two years after such principal (and premium, if any) or interest has become due and payable shall be paid to the Company on Company Order, or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and the Holder of such Security shall thereafter as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for payment thereof, and all liability of the Trustee or such Paying Agent with respect to such trust money, and all liability of the Company as trustee thereof, shall thereupon cease. The Trustee or such Paying Agent, before being required to make any such repayment, may at the direction and expense of the Company mail to the Holders of the Securities as to which the money to be repaid was held in trust, as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register, a notice that such moneys remain unclaimed and that, after a date specified in the notice, which shall not be less than 30 days from the date on which the notice was first mailed to the Holders of the Securities as to which the money to be repaid was held in trust, any unclaimed balance of such moneys then remaining will be paid to the Company free of the trust formerly impressed upon it.

**Section 10.04 Statement as to Compliance.** The Company will deliver to the Trustee, within 120 days after the end of each fiscal year, a written statement signed by the principal executive officer, principal financial officer or principal accounting officer of the Company stating that:

- (1) a review of the activities of the Company during such year and of performance under this Indenture and under the terms of the Securities has been made under his supervision; and
- (2) to the best of his knowledge, based on such review, the Company has fulfilled all its obligations under this Indenture and has complied with all conditions and covenants on its part contained in this Indenture through such year, or, if there has been a default in the fulfillment of any such obligation, covenant or condition, specifying each such default known to him and the nature and status thereof.

For the purpose of this Section 10.04, default and compliance shall be determined without regard to any grace period or requirement of notice provided pursuant to the terms of this Indenture.

**Section 10.05 Legal Existence.** Subject to Article VIII, the Company will do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect its legal existence.

**Section 10.06 Waiver of Certain Covenants.** The Company may omit in respect of any series of Securities, in any particular instance, to comply with any covenant or condition set forth in Sections 10.04 or 10.05 or set forth in a Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto with respect to the Securities of such series, unless otherwise specified in such Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto, if before or after the time for such compliance the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of all series affected by such waiver (voting as one class) shall, by Act of such Securityholders delivered to the Company and the Trustee (in accordance with Section 1.04 hereof), either waive such compliance in such instance or generally waive compliance with such covenant or condition, but no such waiver

shall extend to or affect such covenant or condition except to the extent so expressly waived, and, until such waiver shall become effective, the obligations of the Company and the duties of the Trustee in respect of any such covenant or condition shall remain in full force and effect. Nothing in this Section 10.06 shall permit the waiver of compliance with any covenant or condition set forth in such Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto which, if in the form of an indenture supplemental hereto, would not be permitted by Section 9.02 without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby.

## ARTICLE XI REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES

**Section 11.01 Applicability of Article.** The Company may reserve the right to redeem and pay before Stated Maturity all or any part of the Securities of any series, either by optional redemption, sinking or purchase fund or analogous obligation or otherwise, by provision therefor in the form of Security for such series established and approved pursuant to Section 2.02 and on such terms as are specified in such form or in the Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto with respect to Securities of such series as provided in Section 3.01. Redemption of Securities of any series shall be made in accordance with the terms of such Securities and, to the extent that this Article does not conflict with such terms, the succeeding Sections of this Article. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Indenture, except in the case of redemption pursuant to a sinking fund, the Trustee shall not make any payment in connection with the redemption of Securities until the close of business on the Redemption Date.

**Section 11.02 Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee.** The election of the Company to redeem any Securities redeemable at the election of the Company shall be evidenced by, or pursuant to authority granted by, a Board Resolution. In case of any redemption at the election of the Company of less than all of the Securities of any series, the Company shall, at least 45 days but not more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date fixed by the Company (unless a shorter notice shall be reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee), notify the Trustee of such Redemption Date and of the principal amount of Securities of such series and the Tranche (as defined in Section 11.03) to be redeemed.

In the case of any redemption of Securities (i) prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, or (ii) pursuant to an election of the Company which is subject to a condition specified in the terms of such Securities, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with such restriction or condition.

**Section 11.03 Selection by Trustee of Securities to Be Redeemed.** If less than all the Securities of like tenor and terms of any series (a "Tranche") are to be redeemed, the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected not more than 45 days prior to the Redemption Date by the Trustee, from the Outstanding Securities of such Tranche not previously called for redemption, by such method as the Trustee shall deem fair and appropriate and which may include provision for the selection for redemption of portions of the principal of Securities of such Tranche of a denomination larger than the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of that series. Unless otherwise provided in the terms of a particular series of Securities, the portions of the principal of Securities so selected for partial redemption shall be equal to the

minimum authorized denomination of the Securities of such series, or an integral multiple thereof, and the principal amount which remains outstanding shall not be less than the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of such series. If less than all the Securities of unlike tenor and terms of a series are to be redeemed, the particular Tranche of Securities to be redeemed shall be selected by the Company.

The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company in writing of the Securities selected for redemption and, in the case of any Security selected for partial redemption, the principal amount thereof to be redeemed.

Securities shall be excluded from eligibility for selection for redemption if they are identified by registration and certificate number in a written statement signed by an authorized officer of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at least 45 days prior to the Redemption Date (unless a shorter period shall be reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee) as being owned of record and beneficially by, and not pledged or hypothecated by either, (a) the Company or (b) an entity specifically identified in such written statement as being an Affiliate of the Company.

For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities shall relate, in the case of any Security redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the principal of such Security which has been or is to be redeemed.

**Section 11.04 Notice of Redemption.** Notice of redemption shall be given by first-class mail, postage prepaid, mailed not less than 15 (unless otherwise provided in the Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto establishing the relevant series) nor more than 45 days prior to the Redemption Date, to each holder of Securities to be redeemed, at his address appearing in the Security Register.

All notices of redemption shall state:

- (1) the Redemption Date;
- (2) the Redemption Price;
- (3) if less than all Outstanding Securities of any series are to be redeemed, the identification (and, in the case of partial redemption, the respective principal amounts) of the Securities to be redeemed;
- (4) that on the Redemption Date the Redemption Price will become due and payable upon each such Security, and that interest, if any, thereon shall cease to accrue from and after said date;
- (5) the place where such Securities are to be surrendered for payment of the Redemption Price, which shall be the office or agency of the Company in the Place of Payment;

- (6) that the redemption is on account of a sinking or purchase fund, or other analogous obligation, if that be the case;

61

---

(7) if such Securities are convertible into Common Stock or other securities, the Conversion Price or other conversion price and the date on which the right to convert such Securities into Common Stock or other securities will terminate;

(8) the CUSIP number, ISIN number or any other number identifying the Security, if any; and

(9) if applicable, that the redemption may be rescinded by the Company, at its sole option, pursuant to Section 11.09 of this Indenture upon the occurrence of a Redemption Rescission Event.

Notice of redemption of Securities to be redeemed at the election of the Company shall be given by the Company or, at the Company's request, by the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Company; provided that if the Trustee is asked to give such notice it shall be given at least five Business Days prior notice.

**Section 11.05 Deposit of Redemption Price.** On or prior to any Redemption Date and subject to Section 11.09, the Company shall deposit with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 10.03) an amount of money sufficient to pay the Redemption Price of all the Securities which are to be redeemed on that date. If any Security to be redeemed is converted into Common Stock or other securities, any money so deposited with the Trustee or a Paying Agent shall be paid to the Company upon Company Request or, if then so segregated and held in trust by the Company, shall be discharged from such trust.

**Section 11.06 Securities Payable on Redemption Date.** Notice of redemption having been given as aforesaid, the Securities so to be redeemed shall, subject to Section 11.09, on the Redemption Date, become due and payable at the Redemption Price therein specified and from and after such date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of the Redemption Price) such Securities shall cease to bear interest and any rights to convert such Securities shall terminate. Upon surrender of such Securities for redemption in accordance with the notice and subject to Section 11.09, such Securities shall be paid by the Company at the Redemption Price. Unless otherwise provided with respect to such Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, installments of interest the Stated Maturity of which is on or prior to the Redemption Date shall be payable to the Holders of such Securities registered as such on the relevant Regular Record Dates according to their terms and the provisions of Section 3.07.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the principal shall, until paid, bear interest from the Redemption Date at the rate borne by the Security, or as otherwise provided in such Security.

**Section 11.07 Securities Redeemed in Part.** Any Security which is to be redeemed only in part shall be surrendered at the office or agency of the Company in the Place of Payment with respect to that series (with, if the Company or the Trustee so requires, due endorsement by, or a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustee duly executed by, the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing) and the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security without service

62

---

charge, a new Security or Securities of the same series and Stated Maturity and of like tenor and terms, of any authorized denomination as requested by such Holder in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security so surrendered.

**Section 11.08 Provisions with Respect to Any Sinking Funds.** Unless the form or terms of any series of Securities shall provide otherwise, in lieu of making all or any part of any mandatory sinking fund payment with respect to such series of Securities in cash, the Company may at its option (1) deliver to the Trustee for cancellation any Securities of such series theretofore acquired by the Company or converted by the Holder thereof into Common Stock or other securities, or (2) receive credit for any Securities of such series (not previously so credited) acquired by the Company (including by way of optional redemption (pursuant to the sinking fund or otherwise but not by way of mandatory sinking fund redemption) or converted by the Holder thereof into Common Stock or other securities and theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, and if it does so then (i) Securities so delivered or credited shall be credited at the applicable sinking fund Redemption Price with respect to Securities of such series, and (ii) on or before the 60th day next preceding each sinking fund Redemption Date with respect to such series of Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustee (A) an Officers' Certificate specifying the portions of such sinking fund payment to be satisfied by payment of cash and by delivery or credit of Securities of such series acquired by the Company or converted by the Holder thereof, and (B) such Securities, to the extent not previously surrendered. Such Officers' Certificate shall also state the basis for such credit and that the Securities for which the Company elects to receive credit have not been previously so credited and were not acquired by the Company through operation of the mandatory sinking fund, if any, provided with respect to such Securities and shall also state that no Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series has occurred and is continuing. All Securities so delivered to the Trustee shall be canceled by the Trustee and no Securities shall be authenticated in lieu thereof.

If the sinking fund payment or payments (mandatory or optional) with respect to any series of Securities made in cash plus any unused balance of any preceding sinking fund payments with respect to Securities of such series made in cash shall exceed \$50,000 (or a lesser sum if the Company shall so request), unless otherwise provided by the terms of such series of Securities, that cash shall be applied by the Trustee on the sinking fund Redemption Date with respect to Securities of such series next following the date of such payment to the redemption of Securities of such series at the applicable sinking fund Redemption Price with respect to Securities of such series, together with accrued interest, if any, to the date fixed for redemption, with the effect provided in Section 11.06. The Trustee shall select, in the manner provided in Section 11.03, for redemption on such sinking fund Redemption Date a sufficient principal amount of Securities of such series to utilize that cash and shall thereupon cause notice of redemption of the Securities of such series for the sinking fund to be given in the manner provided in Section 11.04 (and with the effect provided in Section 11.06) for the redemption of Securities in part at the option of the Company. Any sinking fund moneys not so applied or allocated by the Trustee to the redemption of Securities of such series shall be added to the next cash sinking fund payment with respect to Securities of such series received by the Trustee and, together with such payment, shall be applied in accordance with the provisions of this Section 11.08. Any and all sinking fund moneys with respect to Securities of any series held by the Trustee at the Maturity of Securities of such series, and not held for the payment or

63

---

redemption of particular Securities of such series, shall be applied by the Trustee, together with other moneys, if necessary, to be deposited sufficient for the purpose, to the payment of the principal of the Securities of such series at Maturity.

On or before each sinking fund Redemption Date provided with respect to Securities of any series, the Company shall pay to the Trustee in cash a sum equal to all accrued interest, if any, to the date fixed for redemption on Securities to be redeemed on such sinking fund Redemption Date pursuant to this Section 11.08.

**Section 11.09 Rescission of Redemption.** In the event that this Section 11.09 is specified to be applicable to a series of Securities pursuant to Section 3.01 and a Redemption Rescission Event shall occur following any day on which a notice of redemption shall have been given pursuant to Section 11.04 hereof but at or prior to the time and date fixed for redemption as set forth in such notice of redemption, the Company may, at its sole option, at any time prior to the earlier of (i) the close of business on that day which is two Trading Days following such Redemption Rescission Event and (ii) the time and date fixed for redemption as set forth in such notice, rescind the redemption to which such notice of redemption shall have related by making a public announcement of such rescission (the date on which such public announcement shall have been made being hereinafter referred to as the "Rescission Date"). The Company shall be deemed to have made such announcement if it shall issue a release to the Dow Jones New Service, Reuters Information Services or any successor news wire service. From and after the making of such announcement, the Company shall have no obligation to redeem Securities called for redemption pursuant to such notice of redemption or to pay the Redemption Price therefor and all rights of Holders of Securities shall be restored as if such notice of redemption had not been given. As promptly as practicable following the making of such announcement, the Company shall telephonically notify the Trustee and the Paying Agent of such rescission. The Company shall give notice of any such rescission by first-class mail, postage prepaid, mailed as promptly as practicable but in no event later than the close of business on that day which is five Trading Days following the Rescission Date to each Holder of Securities at the close of business on the Rescission Date and to the Trustee and the Paying Agent. Each notice of rescission shall (A) state that the redemption described in the notice of redemption has been rescinded and (B) state that such form must be properly completed and received by the Company no later than the close of business on a date that shall be 15 Trading Days following the date of the mailing of such notice of rescission.

## ARTICLE XII SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES

**Section 12.01 Agreement of Subordination.** The Company covenants and agrees, and each holder of Securities issued hereunder by his acceptance thereof likewise covenants and agrees, that all Securities shall be issued subject to the provisions of this Article XII; and each Securityholder, whether upon original issue or upon transfer or assignment thereof, accepts and agrees to be bound by such provisions.

The payment of the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on all Securities issued hereunder shall, to the extent and in the manner hereinafter set forth, be subordinated and subject

64

---

in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness, whether outstanding at the date of this Indenture or thereafter incurred.

The provisions of this Article XII define the subordination of the Securities, as obligations of the Company, with respect to Senior Indebtedness of the Company, as defined for the Company. All such provisions shall also be deemed to apply in the same way (*mutatis mutandis*) to each Guarantor, with appropriate corresponding references to the Senior Indebtedness of such Guarantor. No provision of this Article XII shall prevent the occurrence of any default or Event of Default hereunder.

**Section 12.02 Payments to Securityholders.** In the event and during the continuation of any default in the payment of principal, premium, interest or any other payment due on any Senior Indebtedness of the Company continuing beyond the period of grace, if any, specified in the instrument or lease evidencing such Senior Indebtedness of the Company, then, unless and until such default shall have been cured or waived or shall have ceased to exist, no payment shall be made by the Company with respect to the principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on the Securities, except sinking fund payments made by the acquisition of Securities under Section 11.08 prior to the happening of such default and payments made pursuant to Article IV hereof from monies deposited with the Trustee pursuant thereto prior to the happening of such default.

Upon any payment by the Company, or distribution of assets of the Company of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities, to creditors upon any dissolution or winding-up or liquidation or reorganization of the Company, whether voluntary or involuntary or in bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or other proceedings, all amounts due or to become due upon all Senior Indebtedness of the Company shall first be paid in full, or payment thereof provided for in money in accordance with its terms, before any payment is made on account of the principal (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities (except payments made pursuant to Article IV hereof from monies deposited with the Trustee pursuant thereto prior to the happening of such dissolution, winding-up, liquidation or reorganization); and upon any such dissolution or winding-up or liquidation or reorganization any payment by the Company, or distribution of assets of the Company of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities, to which the holders of the Securities or the Trustee would be entitled, except for the provisions of this Article XII, shall (except as aforesaid) be paid by the Company or by any receiver, trustee in bankruptcy, liquidating trustee, agent or other Person making such payment or distribution, or by the holders of the Securities or by the Trustee under this Indenture if received by them or it, directly to the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company (pro rata to such holders on the basis of the respective amounts of Senior Indebtedness of the Company held by such holders, as calculated by the Company) or their representative or representatives, or to the trustee or trustees under any indenture pursuant to which any instruments evidencing any Senior Indebtedness of the Company may have been issued, as their respective interests may appear, to the extent necessary to pay all Senior Indebtedness of the Company in full, in money or money's worth, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to or for the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company, before any payment or distribution is made to the holders of the Securities or to the Trustee.

65

---

In the event that, notwithstanding the foregoing, any payment or distribution of assets of the Company of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities, prohibited by the foregoing, shall be received by the Trustee or the holders of the Securities before all Senior Indebtedness of the Company is paid in full, or provision is made for such payment in money in accordance with its terms, such payment or distribution shall be held in trust for the benefit of and shall be paid over or delivered to the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company or their representative or representatives, or to the trustee or trustees under any indenture pursuant to which any instruments evidencing any Senior Indebtedness of the Company may have been issued, as their respective interests may appear, as calculated by the Company, for application to the payment of all Senior Indebtedness of the Company remaining unpaid to the extent necessary to pay all Senior Indebtedness of the Company in full in money in accordance with its terms, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to or for the holders of such Senior Indebtedness. For purposes of this Article XII, the words, "cash, property or securities" shall not be deemed to include shares of stock of the Company as reorganized or readjusted, or securities of the Company or any other corporation provided for by a plan of reorganization or readjustment, the payment of which is subordinated at least to the extent provided in this Article XII with respect to the Securities to the payment of all Senior Indebtedness of the Company which may at the time be outstanding; provided that (i) the Senior Indebtedness of the Company is assumed by the new corporation, if any, resulting from any such reorganization or readjustment, and (ii) the rights of the holders of the Senior Indebtedness of the Company (other than leases) and of leases which are assumed are not, without the consent of such holders, altered by such reorganization or readjustment. The consolidation of the Company with, or the merger of the Company into, another corporation or the liquidation or dissolution of the Company following the conveyance or transfer of its property as an entirety, or substantially as an entirety, to another corporation upon the terms and conditions provided for in Article 8 hereof shall not be deemed a dissolution, winding-up, liquidation or reorganization for the purposes of this Section 12.02 if such other corporation shall, as a part of such consolidation, merger, conveyance or transfer, comply with the conditions stated in Article 8 hereof. Nothing in this Section 12.02 shall apply to claims of, or payments to, the Trustee under or pursuant to Section 6.07.

**Section 12.03 Subrogation of Securities.** Subject to the payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness of the Company, the rights of the holders of the Securities shall be subrogated to the rights of the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company to receive payments or distributions of cash, property or securities of the Company applicable to the Senior Indebtedness of the Company until the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities shall be paid in full; and, for the purposes of such



subrogation, no payments or distributions to the holders of the Senior Indebtedness of the Company of any cash, property or securities to which the holders of the Securities or the Trustee would be entitled except for the provisions of this Article XII no payment over pursuant to the provisions of this Article XII, to or for the benefit of the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company by holders of the Securities or the Trustee, shall, as between the Company, its creditors other than holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company, and the holders of the Securities, be deemed to be a payment by the Company to or on account of the Senior Indebtedness of the Company. It is understood that the provisions of this Article XII are and are intended solely for the purpose of defining the relative rights of the holders of the Securities, on the one hand, and the holders of the Senior Indebtedness of the Company, on the other hand.

Nothing contained in this Article XII or elsewhere in this Indenture or in the Securities is intended to or shall impair, as between the Company, its creditors other than the holders of its Senior Indebtedness, and the holders of the Securities, the obligation of the Company, which is absolute and unconditional, to pay to the holders of the Securities the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities as and when the same shall become due and payable in accordance with their terms, or is intended to or shall affect the relative rights of the holders of the Securities and creditors of the Company other than the holders of its Senior Indebtedness, nor shall anything herein or therein prevent the Trustee or the holder of any Security from exercising all remedies otherwise permitted by applicable law upon default under this Indenture, subject to the rights, if any, under this Article XII of the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company in respect of cash, property or securities of the Company received upon the exercise of any such remedy.

Upon any payment or distribution of assets of the Company referred to in this Article XII, the Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 6.01, and the holders of the Securities shall be entitled to rely upon any order or decree made by any court of competent jurisdiction in which such dissolution, winding-up, liquidation or reorganization proceedings are pending, or a certificate of the receiver, trustee in bankruptcy, liquidating trustee, agent or other Person making such payment or distribution, delivered to the Trustee or to the holders of the Securities, for the purpose of ascertaining the Persons entitled to participate in such distribution, the holders of the Senior Indebtedness and other indebtedness of the Company, the amount thereof or payable thereon, the amount or amounts paid or distributed thereon and all other facts pertinent thereto or to this Article XII.

**Section 12.04 Authorization by Securityholders.** Each holder of a Security by his acceptance thereof authorizes and directs the Trustee in his behalf to take such action as may be necessary or appropriate to effectuate the subordination provided in this Article XII appoints the Trustee his attorney-in-fact for any and all such purposes.

**Section 12.05 Notice to Trustee.** The Company shall give promptly written notice to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee of any fact known to the Company which would prohibit the making of any payment of monies to or by the Trustee in respect of the Securities pursuant to the provisions of this Article XII. Notwithstanding the provisions of this Article XII or any other provision of this Indenture, the Trustee shall not be charged with knowledge of the existence of any facts which would prohibit the making of any payment of monies to or by the Trustee in respect of the Securities pursuant to the provisions of this Article XII, unless and until a Responsible Officer of the Trustee shall have received written notice thereof at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee from the Company or a holder or holders of Senior Indebtedness or from any trustee therefor; and before the receipt of any such written notice, the Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 6.01, shall be entitled in all respects to assume that no such facts exist; provided that if on a date not fewer than three Business Days prior to the date upon which by the terms hereof any such monies may become payable for any purpose (including, without limitation, the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security) the Trustee shall not have received, with respect to such monies, the notice provided for in this Section 12.05, then, anything herein contained to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall have full power and authority to receive such monies and to apply the same to the purpose for

which they were received, and shall not be affected by any notice to the contrary which may be received by it on or after such prior date.

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary hereinbefore set forth, nothing shall prevent any payment by the Company or the Trustee to the Securityholders of monies in connection with a redemption of Securities if (i) notice of such redemption has been given pursuant to Article XI or Section 4.01 hereof prior to the receipt by the Trustee of written notice as aforesaid, and (ii) such notice of redemption is given not earlier than 60 days before the redemption date. The Trustee conclusively shall be entitled to rely on the delivery to it of a written notice by a Person representing himself to be a holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Company (or a trustee on behalf of such holder) to establish that such notice has been given by a holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Company or a trustee on behalf of any such holder or holders. In the event that the Trustee determines in good faith that further evidence is required with respect to the right of any Person as a holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Company to participate in any payment or distribution pursuant to this Article XII, the Trustee may request such Person to furnish evidence to the reasonable satisfaction of the Trustee as to the amount of Senior Indebtedness of the Company held by such Person, the extent to which such Person is entitled to participate in such payment or distribution and any other facts pertinent to the rights of such Person under this Article XII, and if such evidence is not furnished the Trustee may defer any payment to such Person pending judicial determination as to the right of such Person to receive such payment.

**Section 12.06 Trustee's Relation to Senior Indebtedness.** The Trustee in its individual capacity shall be entitled to all the rights set forth in this Article XII in respect of any Senior Indebtedness of the Company at any time held by it, to the same extent as any other holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Company and nothing elsewhere in this Indenture shall deprive the Trustee of any of its rights as such holder.

With respect to the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company, the Trustee undertakes to perform or to observe only such of its covenants and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Article XII, and no implied covenants or obligations with respect to the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee. The Trustee shall not be deemed to owe any fiduciary duty to the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company and the Trustee shall not be liable to any holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Company if it shall pay over or deliver to holders of Securities, the Company or any other Person money or assets to which any holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Company shall be entitled by virtue of this Article XII or otherwise.

**Section 12.07 No Impairment of Subordination.** No right of any present or future holder of any Senior Indebtedness to enforce subordination as herein provided shall at any time in any way be prejudiced or impaired by any act or failure to act on the part of the Company or by any act or failure to act, in good faith, by any such holder, or by any noncompliance by the Company with the terms, provisions and covenants of this Indenture, regardless of any knowledge thereof which any such holder may have or otherwise be charge with.

**Section 12.08 Rights of Trustee.** Nothing in this Article XII shall apply to claims of or payments to, the Trustee pursuant to Section 6.07 or 4.02.

**Section 12.09 Applicable to Paying Agents.** The term "Trustee" as used in this Article XII, shall (unless the context otherwise requires) be construed as extending to and including the Paying Agent within its meaning as fully for all intents and purposes as if the Paying Agent were named in this Article XII in addition to in place of the Trustee; provided, however, that Sections 12.06 and 12.08 shall not apply to the Company or any Affiliate of the Company if it or such Affiliate acts as Paying Agent.

**ARTICLE XIII  
GUARANTEES**

**Section 13.01 Guarantees.** Any series of Securities may be guaranteed by one or more of the Subsidiaries of the Company or other Persons. The terms and the form of any such Guarantee will be established in the manner contemplated by Section 3.01 for the particular series of Securities. Each Guarantor, as primary obligor and not merely as surety, will fully, irrevocably and unconditionally guarantee, on a subordinated basis, to each Holder of Securities (including each Holder of Securities issued under the Indenture after the date of this Indenture) and to the Trustee and its successors and assigns (i) the full and punctual payment of principal of and interest on the Securities when due, whether at maturity, by acceleration, by redemption or otherwise, and all other monetary obligations of the Company under this Indenture (including obligations to the Trustee) and the Securities and (ii) the full and punctual performance within applicable grace periods of all other obligations of the Company under this Indenture and the Securities. The obligations of each Guarantor under any such Guarantee will be junior and subordinated in right of payment to the Senior Indebtedness of such Guarantor in the same manner and to the same extent as the Securities are subordinated to the Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer.

(a) Each of the Guarantors further agrees that its obligations hereunder shall be unconditional irrespective of the absence or existence of any action to enforce the same, the recovery of any judgment against the Company or any other Guarantor (except to the extent such judgment is paid) or any waiver or amendment of the provisions of this Indenture or the Securities to the extent that any such action or any similar action would otherwise constitute a legal or equitable discharge or defense of a guarantor (except that each such waiver or amendment shall be effective in accordance with its terms).

(b) Each of the Guarantors further agrees that each Guarantee constitutes a guarantee of payment, performance and compliance and not merely of collection.

(c) Each of the Guarantors further agrees to waive presentment to, demand of payment from and protest to the Company or any other Person, and also waives diligence, notice of acceptance of its Guarantee, presentment, demand for payment, notice of protest for nonpayment, the filing of claims with a court in the event of merger or bankruptcy of the Company or any other Person and any right to require a proceeding first against the Company or any other Person. The obligations of the Guarantors shall not be affected by any failure or policy on the part of the Trustee to exercise any right or remedy under this Indenture or the Securities of any series.

69

---

(d) The obligation of each Guarantor to make any payment hereunder may be satisfied by causing the Company or any other Person to make such payment. If any Holder of any Security or the Trustee is required by any court or otherwise to return to the Company or any Guarantor, or any custodian, trustee, liquidator or other similar official acting in relation to any of the Company or any Guarantor, any amount paid by any of them to the Trustee or such Holder, the Guarantee of such Guarantor, to the extent theretofore discharged, shall be reinstated in full force and effect.

(e) Each Guarantor also agrees to pay any and all reasonable costs and expenses (including reasonable attorneys' fees) incurred by the Trustee or any Holder of Securities in enforcing any of their respective rights under its Guarantees.

(f) Any term or provision of this Indenture to the contrary notwithstanding, the maximum aggregate amount of each of the Guarantees shall not exceed the maximum amount that can be guaranteed by the relevant Guarantor without rendering the relevant Guarantee under this Indenture voidable under applicable law relating to fraudulent conveyance or fraudulent transfer or similar laws affecting the rights of creditors generally.

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed as of the day and year first above written.

TWO HARBORS INVESTMENT CORP.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

, as Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

70

---

STINSON LEONARD STREET LLP  
 50 SOUTH SIXTH STREET, SUITE 2600  
 MINNEAPOLIS MN 55402

February 28, 2018

Two Harbors Investment Corp.  
 575 Lexington Avenue, Suite 2930  
 New York, New York 10022

Re: Automatic Shelf Registration Statement on Form S-3ASR, filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on February 28, 2018 (the "Registration Statement")

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as counsel to Two Harbors Investment Corp., a Maryland corporation (the "Company") in connection with the filing of the above-referenced Registration Statement with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Commission") under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act").

This opinion letter is being furnished in accordance with the requirements of Item 16 of the Commission's Form S-3 and Item 601(b)(5) of Regulation S-K under the Securities Act.

The Registration Statement relates to the proposed issuance and sale from time to time pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of the following securities:

- (i) shares of the Company's common stock, par value \$0.01 per share ("Common Stock");
- (ii) shares of the Company's preferred stock, par value \$0.01 per share ("Preferred Stock") (including shares convertible into or exchangeable for other securities), with such preferences and other terms as determined in accordance with the Company's Articles of Amendment and Restatement and Amended and Restated Bylaws, each as may be further amended and/or restated;
- (iii) depositary shares, representing shares of the Company's Preferred Stock ("Depositary Shares"); and
- (iv) debt securities of the Company, which may consist of debentures, notes, or other types of debt, including senior debt securities ("Senior Debt Securities") and subordinated debt securities ("Subordinated Debt Securities"; collectively with the Senior Debt Securities, the "Debt Securities").

Each series of Senior Debt Securities will be issued pursuant to an indenture (as amended or supplemented from time to time, the "Senior Indenture") dated as of January 19, 2017 between the Company and The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., as trustee (the "Senior Indenture Trustee"). Each series of Subordinated Debt Securities will be issued pursuant to an indenture (as amended or supplemented from time to time, the "Subordinated Indenture"; collectively with the Senior Indenture, the "Indenture"), proposed to be entered into between the Company and a bank or trust company to be named therein, as trustee (the "Subordinated Indenture Trustee"; collectively with the Senior Indenture Trustee, the "Trustee"). Each Depositary Share will be issued pursuant to a deposit agreement by and between the Company and a bank or trust company as depositary (a "Deposit Agreement"), and will be evidenced by a depositary receipt (a "Depositary Receipt") in substantially the form filed as an exhibit to a post-effective amendment to the Registration Statement or as an exhibit to a document filed under the Exchange Act and incorporated into the Registration Statement by reference.

In the capacity described above, we have considered such matters of law and of fact, including the examination of originals or copies, certified or otherwise identified to our satisfaction, of such records and documents of the Company, including, without limitation, resolutions adopted by the boards of directors of the Company and the organizational documents of the Company and such other documents as we have deemed appropriate as a basis for the opinions hereinafter set forth. We also have made such further legal and factual examinations and investigations as we deemed necessary for purposes of expressing the opinion set forth herein.

As to certain factual matters relevant to this opinion letter, we have relied conclusively upon originals or copies, certified or otherwise identified to our satisfaction, of such records, agreements, documents and instruments, including certificates or comparable documents of officers of the Company and of public officials, as we have deemed appropriate as a basis for the opinion hereinafter set

---

forth. Except to the extent expressly set forth herein, we have made no independent investigations with regard to matters of fact, and, accordingly, we do not express any opinion as to matters that might have been disclosed by independent verification. In our examination of the relevant documents, we have assumed the genuineness of all signatures, the legal capacity of all natural persons, the accuracy and completeness of all documents submitted to us, the authenticity of all original documents and the conformity to authentic original documents of all documents submitted to us as copies (including telecopies). This opinion letter is given, and all statements herein are made, in the context of the foregoing. Our opinions set forth below are limited to the laws of the State of Maryland, applicable provisions of the Constitution of the State of Maryland, reported judicial decisions interpreting such laws and Constitution, and federal laws of the United States of America to the extent referred to specifically herein, and we do not express any opinion herein concerning any other laws; provided, however, that opinion (3) below is limited to the laws of the State of New York that, in our professional judgment, are normally applicable to transactions of the type contemplated by the Indenture, and, with respect to opinion (3) below, we do not express any opinion herein concerning any other laws.

Based upon the foregoing and subject to the limitations, qualifications, exceptions and assumptions set forth herein, it is our opinion that:

- (1) When, as and if (a) appropriate corporate action has been taken to authorize the issuance of Common Stock, (b) any legally required consents, approvals, authorizations and other orders of the Commission and any other regulatory authorities are obtained, (c) Common Stock shall have been duly issued and delivered by the Company against payment therefor in accordance with such corporate action, and (d) certificates representing shares of Common Stock have been duly executed by the duly authorized officers of the Company in accordance with applicable law, then, upon the happening of such events, such Common Stock will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable (provided that the consideration paid therefor is not less than the par value thereof).
- (2) When, as and if (a) appropriate corporate action has been taken to authorize the issuance of Preferred Stock, to fix the terms thereof and to authorize the execution and filing of a certificate of designation relating thereto with the Maryland Department of Assessments and Taxation, (b) such certificate of designation shall have been executed by duly authorized officers of the Company and so filed by the Company, all in accordance with the laws of the State of Maryland, (c) any legally

required consents, approvals, authorizations and other orders of the Commission and any other regulatory authorities are obtained, (d) Preferred Stock with terms so fixed shall have been duly issued and delivered by the Company against payment therefor in accordance with such corporate action, and (e) certificates representing shares of Preferred Stock have been duly executed by the duly authorized officers of the Company in accordance with applicable law, then, upon the happening of such events, such Preferred Stock will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable (provided that the consideration paid therefor is not less than the par value thereof).

- (3) When, as and if (a) the appropriate corporate action has been taken by the Company to authorize the form, terms, execution and delivery of any series of Debt Securities, (b) the Debt Securities shall have been issued in the form and containing the terms set forth in the Registration Statement, the Indenture and such corporate action, (c) any legally required consents, approvals, authorizations and other orders of the Commission and any other regulatory authorities are obtained, (d) due execution of the Debt Securities by the Company, (e) the Debt Securities have been duly authenticated by the Trustee in accordance with the applicable Indenture, and (f) the issuance and delivery of the Debt Securities against payment therefor as provided in the applicable Indenture and other applicable agreements, then, upon the happening of such events, the Debt Securities will be validly issued and will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms, except to the extent that (x) enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, liquidation, reorganization, moratorium and other laws relating to or affecting the rights and remedies of creditors generally, and (y) the remedy of specific performance and other forms of equitable relief may be subject to certain defenses and to the discretion of the court before which proceedings may be brought (regardless of whether enforceability is considered in a proceeding in equity or at law).
- (4) When, as and if (a) the terms, and the execution and delivery, of the Deposit Agreement relating to the Depositary Shares and the terms of the Depositary Shares and of their issuance and sale have been duly authorized and approved by all necessary corporate action, (b) the Deposit Agreement and the Depositary Receipts have been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and such depositary as shall have been duly appointed by the Company (the “Depositary”), (c) the terms of the Depositary Shares and the Depositary Receipts have been established in accordance with the applicable Deposit Agreement so as not to violate any applicable law, rule or regulation or result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company, and so as to comply with any applicable requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental authority having jurisdiction over the Company, (d) the shares of Preferred Stock relating to the Depositary Shares have been duly authorized and validly issued and are fully paid and non-assessable as contemplated in paragraph (2) above and have been deposited with the Depositary under the

---

applicable Deposit Agreement and (e) the Depositary Receipts have been duly executed, countersigned, registered and delivered, as contemplated by the Registration Statement and any prospectus supplement related thereto, and in accordance with the terms of the Deposit Agreement and any underwriting agreement, relating to such issuance, against payment of the consideration fixed therefor by the appropriate corporate action, then upon the happening of such events the Depositary Receipts will be validly issued.

This opinion letter is provided for use solely in connection with the transactions contemplated by the Registration Statement and may not be used, circulated, quoted or otherwise relied upon for any other purpose without our express written consent. The only opinions rendered by us consist of those matters set forth in those paragraphs numbered (1) through (4) above, and no opinion may be implied or inferred beyond the opinion expressly stated. Our opinions expressed herein are each made as of the date hereof, and we undertake no obligation to advise you of any changes in applicable law or any other matters that may come to our attention after the date hereof that may affect our opinions expressed herein.

We consent to the filing of this opinion letter as an exhibit to the Registration Statement and to the use of our name under the heading “Legal Matters” in the Prospectus constituting a part thereof. In giving such consent, we do not thereby admit that we are an “expert” under the meaning of the Securities Act or that we otherwise are within the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Securities Act or the rules and regulations of the Commission thereunder.

STINSON LEONARD STREET LLP

/s/ Stinson Leonard Street LLP

---

# SIDLEY

SIDLEY AUSTIN LLP  
787 SEVENTH AVENUE  
NEW YORK, NY 10019  
+1 212 839 5300  
+1 212 839 5599

AMERICA · ASIA PACIFIC · EUROPE

February 28, 2018

Two Harbors Investment Corp.  
590 Madison Avenue, 36th Floor  
New York, New York 10022

Re: Two Harbors Investment Corp.

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as special tax counsel to Two Harbors Investment Corp., a Maryland corporation (the "Company"), in connection with the filing by the Company of a Registration Statement on Form S-3, and any amendments thereto (collectively, the "Registration Statement") with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Commission") under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "1933 Act").

In connection with rendering this opinion letter, we have examined originals or copies, certified or otherwise identified to our satisfaction, of the Registration Statement and the related form of prospectus (the "Prospectus") included therein in the form in which it was transmitted to the Commission under the 1933 Act, the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017 filed with the Commission on February 27, 2018 (together with documents incorporated by reference therein, the "Form 10-K") and such other documentation and information provided to us by you as we have deemed necessary or appropriate as a basis for the opinion set forth herein. In addition, we are relying upon a certificate containing certain factual statements, factual representations and covenants of an officer of the Company dated the date hereof (the "Officer's Certificate") relating to, among other things, the actual and proposed operations of the Company and the entities in which it holds, or has held, a direct or indirect interest (collectively, the "Company Group").

For purposes of our opinion, we have not independently verified all of the facts, statements, representations and covenants set forth in the Officer's Certificate, the Registration Statement and the related Prospectus, the Form 10-K or in any other document hereunder. In particular, we note that the Company Group may engage in transactions in connection with which we have not provided legal advice, and have not reviewed, and of which we may be unaware. Consequently, we have relied on the Company's representation that the facts, statements, representations, and covenants presented in the Officer's Certificate, the Registration Statement and the related Prospectus, the Form 10-K and other documents, or otherwise furnished to us, accurately and completely describe all material facts relevant to our opinion. We

Sidley Austin (NY) LLP is a Delaware limited liability partnership doing business as Sidley Austin LLP and practicing in affiliation with other Sidley Austin partnerships.

have assumed that all such facts, statements, representations and covenants are true without regard to any qualification as to knowledge, belief, intent or materiality. Our opinion is conditioned on the continuing accuracy and completeness of such facts, statements, representations and covenants. Any variation or difference in the facts, statements, representations, and covenants referred to, set forth, or assumed herein or in the Officer's Certificate may affect our conclusions set forth herein.

In our review of certain documents in connection with our opinion as expressed below, we have assumed the legal capacity of all natural persons, the genuineness of all signatures, the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals, the conformity to original documents of all documents submitted to us as certified, conformed, photostatic, or electronic copies, and the authenticity of the originals of such copies. Where documents have been provided to us in draft form, we have assumed that the final executed versions of such documents will not differ materially from such drafts.

We have further assumed, with your consent, that (i) the purchase and sale of the securities being registered in the Registration Statement have been or will be consummated in accordance with the provisions of the Prospectus (and no covenants or conditions described therein and affecting this opinion will be waived or modified), (ii) the parties to the transactions described above will treat the purchase and sale of the securities being registered in the Registration Statement and all related transactions for U.S. federal income tax purposes in a manner consistent with the opinion set forth below, (iii) all applicable reporting requirements have been or will be satisfied, (iv) each of the written agreements to which the Company Group is a party has been and will be implemented, construed and enforced in accordance with its terms, and (v) no action will be taken by the Company Group after the date hereof that would have the effect of altering facts upon which the opinions set forth below are based. If any of the above described assumptions is untrue for any reason, or if the purchase and sale of the securities registered under the Registration Statement are consummated in a manner that is different from the manner described in the Registration Statement and the related Prospectus, our opinion as expressed below may be adversely affected.

In rendering this opinion letter, we have considered and relied upon the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code"), the regulations promulgated thereunder ("Regulations"), administrative rulings and other U.S. Treasury interpretations of the Code and the Regulations by the courts and the Internal Revenue Service ("IRS"), all as they exist at the date hereof. It should be noted that the Code, Regulations, judicial decisions and administrative interpretations are subject to change at any time and, in some circumstances, with retroactive effect. A material change that is made after the date hereof in any of the foregoing bases for our opinions could affect our conclusions set forth herein. In this regard, an opinion of counsel with respect to an issue represents counsel's best judgment as to the outcome on the merits with respect to such issue, is not binding on the IRS or the courts, and is not a guarantee that the IRS will not assert a contrary position with respect to such issue or that a court will not sustain such a position if asserted by the IRS. This opinion letter shall not be construed as or deemed to be a guaranty or insuring agreement.

We express no opinion as to the laws of any jurisdiction other than the federal income tax laws of the United States. We express no opinion on any issue relating to the Company, PRCM

Based on and subject to the foregoing, we are of the opinion that:

1. Commencing with its taxable year that ended on December 31, 2014, the Company has been organized and operated in conformity with the requirements for qualification and taxation as a real estate investment trust (a “REIT”), and its current organization and proposed method of operation will enable it to continue to meet the requirements for qualification and taxation as a REIT under the Code. In addition, the Company’s qualification and taxation as a REIT depend upon its ability to meet, through actual operating results, certain requirements relating to the sources of its income, the nature of its assets, its distribution levels and the diversity of its stock ownership, and various other qualification tests imposed under the Code, the results of which are not reviewed by us. Accordingly, no assurance can be given that the actual results of the Company’s operations for any one taxable year will satisfy the requirements for taxation as a REIT under the Code.

2. Although the discussion set forth in the Prospectus under the heading “U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations” does not purport to discuss all possible United States federal income tax consequences of the ownership and disposition of the securities being registered in the Registration Statement, such discussion, though general in nature, constitutes, in all material respects, a fair and accurate summary under current law of the material United States federal income tax consequences of the ownership and disposition of such securities, subject to the qualifications set forth therein. The United States federal income tax consequences of the ownership and disposition of the securities being registered in the Registration Statement by an investor will depend upon that investor’s particular situation, and we express no opinion as to the completeness of the discussions set forth in the Prospectus under the heading “U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations” as applied to any particular investor.

This opinion letter is expressed as of the date hereof, and we undertake no obligation to supplement or revise our opinions to reflect any legal developments or factual matters arising subsequent to the date hereof, or the impact of any information, document, certificate, record, statement, representation, covenant or assumption relied upon herein that becomes incorrect or untrue. As described above, the Company’s qualification and taxation as a REIT depend upon the Company’s ability to meet the various requirements imposed under the Code, including through actual annual operating results, asset composition, distribution levels and diversity of stock ownership, the results of which have not been and will not be reviewed by us. Accordingly, no assurance can be given that the actual results of the Company’s operation for any particular taxable year will satisfy such requirements.

This opinion has been prepared for you in connection with the filing of the Registration Statement. We consent to the filing of this opinion as an exhibit to the Registration Statement and to the reference to Sidley Austin LLP therein. In giving this consent, we do not thereby admit that we are in the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the 1933 Act of 1933, as amended, or the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder by the Commission.

3

---

Very truly yours,

/s/ Sidley Austin LLP

4

---

Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

We consent to the reference to our firm under the caption "Experts" in this Registration Statement (Form S-3) and related Prospectus of Two Harbors Investment Corp. for the registration of its common stock, preferred stock, depositary shares, and debt securities and to the incorporation by reference therein of our reports dated February 27, 2018, with respect to the consolidated financial statements and the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting of Two Harbors Investment Corp., included in its Annual Report (Form 10-K) for the year ended December 31, 2017, filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

Minneapolis, MN  
February 28, 2018

---

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**

Washington, D.C. 20549

**FORM T-1**

**STATEMENT OF ELIGIBILITY  
UNDER THE TRUST INDENTURE ACT OF 1939 OF A  
CORPORATION DESIGNATED TO ACT AS TRUSTEE**

**CHECK IF AN APPLICATION TO DETERMINE  
ELIGIBILITY OF A TRUSTEE PURSUANT TO  
SECTION 305(b)(2)**

**THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST COMPANY, N.A.**

(Exact name of trustee as specified in its charter)

(Jurisdiction of incorporation  
if not a U.S. national bank)

**95-3571558**  
(I.R.S. employer  
identification no.)

**400 South Hope Street  
Suite 500  
Los Angeles, California**  
(Address of principal executive offices)

**90071**  
(Zip code)

**Two Harbors Investment Corp.**

(Exact name of obligor as specified in its charter)

**Maryland**  
(State or Other Jurisdiction of  
Incorporation or Organization)

**27-0312904**  
(I.R.S. employer  
identification no.)

**575 Lexington Avenue, Suite 2930  
New York, New York**  
(Address of principal executive offices)

**10022**  
(Zip code)

**Senior Debt Securities**

(Title of the indenture securities)

**1. General information. Furnish the following information as to the Trustee:**

**(a) Name and address of each examining or supervising authority to which it is subject.**

Name	Address
Comptroller of the Currency United States Department of the Treasury	Washington, DC 20219
Federal Reserve Bank of New York	San Francisco, CA 94105
Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation	Washington, D.C. 20429

**(b) Whether it is authorized to exercise corporate trust powers.**

Yes.

**2. Affiliations with Obligor.**

**If the obligor is an affiliate of the trustee, describe each such affiliation.**



None.

**16. List of Exhibits.**

Exhibits identified in parentheses below, on file with the Commission, are incorporated herein by reference as an exhibit hereto, pursuant to Rule 7a-29 under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (the "Act") and 17 C.F.R. 229.10(d).

4. A copy of the existing By-laws of the Trustee (Exhibit 4 to Form T-1 filed with Registration Statement No. 333-188382).
6. The consent of the Trustee required by Section 321(b) of the Act (Exhibit 6 to Form T-1 filed with Registration Statement No. 333-188382).
7. A copy of the latest report of condition of the Trustee published pursuant to law or to the requirements of its supervising or examining authority.

2

SIGNATURE

Pursuant to the requirements of the Act, the Trustee, The Bank of New York Mellon, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the United States of America, has duly caused this statement of eligibility to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, all in The City of Chicago, and State of Illinois, on the 22nd day of February, 2018.

THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST COMPANY, N.A.

By: /s/ R. Tarnas  
Name: R. Tarnas  
Title: Vice President

3

**EXHIBIT 7**

Consolidated Report of Condition of  
THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST COMPANY, N.A.  
of 400 South Hope Street, Suite 500, Los Angeles, CA 90071

At the close of business December 31, 2017, published in accordance with Federal regulatory authority instructions.

	<u>Dollar amounts in thousands</u>
<b>ASSETS</b>	
Cash and balances due from depository institutions:	
Noninterest-bearing balances and currency and coin	4,247
Interest-bearing balances	533,579
Securities:	
Held-to-maturity securities	0
Available-for-sale securities	542,018
Federal funds sold and securities purchased under agreements to resell:	
Federal funds sold	0
Securities purchased under agreements to resell	0
Loans and lease financing receivables:	
Loans and leases held for sale	0
Loans and leases, held for investment	0
LESS: Allowance for loan and lease losses	0
Loans and leases held for investment, net of allowance	0
Trading assets	0
Premises and fixed assets (including capitalized leases)	10,756
Other real estate owned	0
Investments in unconsolidated subsidiaries and associated companies	0
Direct and indirect investments in real estate ventures	0
Intangible assets:	
Goodwill	856,313
Other intangible assets	24,347
Other assets	121,741
Total assets	<u>\$ 2,093,001</u>

1

**LIABILITIES**

Deposits:		
In domestic offices		602
Noninterest-bearing	602	

